



EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Libraries

SCSI Reference

Copyright

Copyright 1993 – 1996 by Exabyte Corporation. All rights reserved. This item and the information contained herein are the property of Exabyte Corporation. No part of this document may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the express written permission of Exabyte Corporation, 1685 38th Street, Boulder, Colorado 80301.

Disclaimer

Exabyte Corporation makes no representation or warranties with respect to the content of this document and specifically disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Exabyte Corporation reserves the right to revise this publication without obligation to notify any person or organization of such revision or changes.

Trademark Notices

EXABYTE, EXAPAK, EXB, FileSECURE, LANCourier, and NetSECURE are registered trademarks of Exabyte Corporation. Eagle, EXA, EXATAPE, EXAFacts, EXA*soft*, and SCIMON are trademarks of Exabyte Corporation. All other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Revision History

Revision	Date	Description
000	July 1993	Preliminary
001	November 1993	Beta
002	February 1994	Initial release
003	April 1995	Updated to add dual sequential mode and remove 4-pin serial port mode
004	April 1996	Update for EXB-220 beta and Exabyte Mammoth
005	May 1996	Release for EXB-220 and Exabyte Mammoth

Exabyte Corporation
1685 38th Street
Boulder, Colorado 80301
(303) 442-4333

510806-005

Product Warranty Caution

The EXABYTE® EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Libraries are warranted to be free from defects in materials, parts, and workmanship and will conform to the current product specifications upon delivery. **For the specific details of your warranty, refer to your sales contract or contact the company from which the 4mm library was purchased.**

The warranty for the EXB-210 and EXB-220 shall not apply to failures caused by:

- Physical abuse or use not consistent with the operating instructions or product specifications provided by Exabyte's personnel or agent for the applicable equipment.
- Modifications by other than Exabyte's personnel or agent in any way other than those approved by Exabyte, provided the warranty shall not be voided by the repair or replacement of parts or the attachment of items in the manner described in maintenance or installation instructions provided by Exabyte.
- Repair by other than Exabyte's personnel or agent in a manner contrary to the maintenance instructions provided by Exabyte.
- Removal of the Exabyte serial number tag.
- Physical abuse due to improper packaging of returns.

CAUTION

Returning the library in unauthorized packaging may damage the unit and void the warranty.

If you are returning the library for repair, repack it in its original packaging (or in replacement packaging obtained from your vendor). Refer to the packing instructions in *EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation*.

If problems with the EXB-210 or EXB-220 occur, contact your maintenance organization; do not void the product warranty by allowing untrained or unauthorized personnel to attempt repairs.

Patents

The EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Libraries and related Exabyte products are covered by one or more of the following patents (other patents pending):

4,835,628	5,025,333	5,111,463	5,287,233	D356,302
4,843,495	5,034,833	5,142,422	5,287,478	5,406,425
4,845,577	5,050,018	5,173,817	5,309,300	5,416,653
4,845,713	5,059,772	5,177,417	5,349,481	5,426,355
4,845,714	5,065,261	5,191,491	5,359,468	
4,972,277	5,068,757	5,237,467	5,369,285	
4,984,106	5,103,986	5,243,473	5,398,140	

Contents

About This Manual xvii

1 Overview of the Library as a SCSI Device 1-1

1.1	General Features	1-1
1.2	Control Modes	1-3
1.3	Relationship to the SCSI Bus	1-6
1.4	Elements and Element Addresses	1-7
1.5	Communication across the SCSI Bus	1-10

2 Implementing SCSI Operations 2-1

2.1	Controlling Parity Checking	2-1
2.2	Disconnecting from the SCSI Bus	2-3
2.3	Resetting the Library	2-4
2.4	Setting Element Addresses	2-6
2.5	Understanding the Cartridge Inventory	2-7
2.6	Moving Cartridges	2-13
2.7	Reserving Elements	2-14
2.8	Inquiring about Library Status	2-14
2.9	Performing Diagnostics	2-15
2.10	Copying Firmware	2-15

3 General Command Processing 3-1

4 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) 4-1

4.1	About This Command	4-1
4.2	What You Send to the Library	4-3
4.3	Effects on the Cartridge Inventory	4-4
4.4	How the Library Executes This Command	4-8
4.5	Command Status	4-10

5 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) 5-1

5.1	About This Command	5-2
5.2	What You Send to the Library	5-3
5.3	Effects on the Cartridge Inventory	5-4
5.4	How the Library Executes This Command	5-8
5.5	Command Status	5-10

6	INQUIRY (12h)	6-1
6.1	About This Command	6-1
6.2	What You Send to the Library	6-2
6.3	What the Library Returns	6-3
6.4	How the Library Executes This Command	6-8
6.5	Command Status	6-10
7	LOG SENSE (4Dh)	7-1
7.1	About This Command	7-1
7.2	What You Send to the Library	7-2
7.3	What the Library Returns	7-5
7.4	How the Library Executes This Command	7-18
7.5	Command Status	7-20
8	MODE SELECT (15h)	8-1
8.1	About This Command	8-1
8.2	What You Send to the Library	8-2
8.3	How the Library Executes This Command	8-12
8.4	Command Status	8-14
9	MODE SENSE (1Ah)	9-1
9.1	About This Command	9-1
9.2	What You Send to the Library	9-2
9.3	What the Library Returns	9-3
9.4	How the Library Executes This Command	9-14
9.5	Command Status	9-16
10	MOVE MEDIUM (A5h)	10-1
10.1	About This Command	10-2
10.2	What You Send to the Library	10-2
10.3	Effects on the Cartridge Inventory	10-3
10.4	How the Library Executes This Command	10-7
10.5	Command Status	10-11
11	POSITION TO ELEMENT (2Bh)	11-1
11.1	About This Command	11-1
11.2	What You Send to the Library	11-2
11.3	How the Library Executes This Command	11-2
11.4	Command Status	11-4

12	PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (1Eh)	12-1
12.1	About This Command	12-1
12.2	What You Send to the Library	12-2
12.3	How the Library Executes This Command	12-2
12.4	Command Status	12-4
13	READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h)	13-1
13.1	About This Command	13-2
13.2	What You Send to the Library	13-2
13.3	What the Library Returns	13-4
13.4	How the Library Executes This Command	13-17
13.5	Command Status	13-19
14	READ FIRMWARE (D0h)	14-1
14.1	About This Command	14-1
14.2	What You Send to the Library	14-2
14.3	How the Library Executes This Command	14-2
14.4	Command Status	14-4
15	RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch)	15-1
15.1	About This Command	15-1
15.2	What You Send to the Library	15-2
15.3	What the Library Returns	15-3
15.4	How the Library Executes This Command	15-5
15.5	Command Status	15-6
16	RELEASE (17h)	16-1
16.1	About This Command	16-1
16.2	What You Send to the Library	16-2
16.3	How the Library Executes This Command	16-2
16.4	Command Status	16-4
17	REQUEST SENSE (03h)	17-1
17.1	About This Command	17-1
17.2	What You Send to the Library	17-2
17.3	What the Library Returns	17-3
17.4	How the Library Executes This Command	17-7
17.5	Command Status	17-9

18 REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h) 18-1

18.1 About This Command	18-2
18.2 What You Send to the Library	18-3
18.3 What the Library Returns	18-5
18.4 How the Library Executes This Command	18-16
18.5 Command Status	18-18

19 RESERVE (16h) 19-1

19.1 About This Command	19-1
19.2 What You Send to the Library	19-3
19.3 How the Library Executes This Command	19-5
19.4 Command Status	19-8

20 SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh) 20-1

20.1 About This Command	20-1
20.2 What You Send to the Library	20-2
20.3 How the Library Executes This Command	20-7
20.4 Command Status	20-9

21 SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) 21-1

21.1 About This Command	21-2
21.2 What You Send to the Library	21-3
21.3 How the Library Executes This Command	21-5
21.4 Command Status	21-7

22 TEST UNIT READY (00h) 22-1

22.1 About This Command	22-1
22.2 What You Send to the Library	22-2
22.3 How the Library Executes This Command	22-2
22.4 Command Status	22-2

23 WRITE FIRMWARE (D1h) 23-1

23.1 About This Command	23-2
23.2 What You Send to the Library	23-3
23.3 How the Library Executes This Command	23-4
23.4 Command Status	23-7

A	Library Error Handling	A-1
	Initiators That Support Only the Command Complete Message	A-1
	Initiators That Support Additional Messages	A-6
B	Library Message Processing	B-1
	When the Library Accepts and Processes Messages	B-2
	SCSI Messages Supported by the Library	B-3
	How the Library Responds to Messages	B-10
C	LCD Character Set	C-1
D	Error Codes	D-1
	Not Ready (Sense Key 2h)	D-1
	Hardware Error (Sense Key 4h)	D-2
	Illegal Request (Sense Key 5h)	D-6
	Unit Attention (Sense Key 6h)	D-7
	Aborted Command (Sense Key Bh)	D-8
	Glossary	G-1
	Index	I-1

Figures

Overview of the Library as a SCSI Device

Figure 1-1	EXB-210 with cover removed (rack-mount version shown)	1-2
Figure 1-2	EXB-220 with cover removed (rack-mount version shown)	1-3
Figure 1-3	Data cartridge slot assignments for Dual Sequential mode for the EXB-210	1-4
Figure 1-4	Data cartridge slot assignments for Dual Sequential mode for the EXB-220	1-5
Figure 1-5	Default element addresses (element indexes) for the standalone library	1-8
Figure 1-6	Default element addresses (element indexes) for the rack-mount library	1-9

INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h)

Figure 4-1	INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS command execution	4-9
-------------------	---	-----

INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h)

Figure 5-1	INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE command execution	5-9
-------------------	---	-----

INQUIRY (12h)

Figure 6-1	INQUIRY command execution	6-9
-------------------	-------------------------------------	-----

LOG SENSE (4Dh)

Figure 7-1	Sample history of events	7-12
Figure 7-2	LOG SENSE command execution	7-19

MODE SELECT (15h)

Figure 8-1	MODE SELECT command execution	8-13
-------------------	---	------

MODE SENSE (1Ah)

Figure 9-1	MODE SENSE command execution	9-15
-------------------	--	------

MOVE MEDIUM (A5h)

- Figure 10-1** MOVE MEDIUM command execution — source validation 10-8
Figure 10-2 MOVE MEDIUM command execution — destination validation . . 10-9
Figure 10-3 MOVE MEDIUM command execution — cartridge move 10-10

POSITION TO ELEMENT (2Bh)

- Figure 11-1** POSITION TO ELEMENT command execution 11-3

PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (1Eh)

- Figure 12-1** PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command execution . . 12-3

READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h)

- Figure 13-1** READ ELEMENT STATUS command execution 13-18

READ FIRMWARE (D0h)

- Figure 14-1** READ FIRMWARE command execution 14-3

RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch)

- Figure 15-1** RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command execution 15-5

RELEASE (17h)

- Figure 16-1** RELEASE command execution 16-3

REQUEST SENSE (03h)

- Figure 17-1** REQUEST SENSE command execution 17-8

REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h)

- Figure 18-1** REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command execution . 18-17

RESERVE (16h)

- Figure 19-1** RESERVE command execution – unit reservation 19-6
Figure 19-2 RESERVE command execution – element reservation 19-7

SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh)

- Figure 20-1** SEND DIAGNOSTIC command execution 20-8

SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h)

Figure 21-1 SEND VOLUME TAG command execution 21-6

WRITE FIRMWARE (D1h)

Figure 23-1 WRITE FIRMWARE command execution 23-5
Figure 23-2 WRITE FIRMWARE command execution (continued) 23-6

Library Error Handling

Figure A-1 Error handling during the Command Out phase (for systems that support only the Command Complete message) A-3
Figure A-2 Error handling during the Data Out phase (for systems that support only the Command Complete message) A-4
Figure A-3 Error handling during the Message Out phase (for systems that support additional messages) A-7
Figure A-4 Error handling during the Command Out phase (for systems that support additional messages) A-9
Figure A-5 Error handling during the Data Out phase (for systems that support additional messages) A-11

Tables

Overview of the Library as a SCSI Device

Table 1-1	SCSI bus phases and information transfer phases	1-10
Table 1-2	SCSI messages supported by the library	1-11
Table 1-3	SCSI commands supported by the library	1-13
Table 1-4	SCSI command status bytes supported by the library	1-15

Implementing SCSI Operations

Table 2-1	Enabling and disabling parity checking	2-2
------------------	--	-----

General Command Processing

Table 3-1	Command handling when an invalid LUN has been sent to the library	3-7
Table 3-2	Command handling when the library is reserved by a different initiator	3-11
Table 3-3	Command handling when the library is busy	3-13
Table 3-4	Command handling when a Unit Attention condition is pending . .	3-15
Table 3-5	Command handling when the library is executing ROM boot code	3-18
Table 3-6	Command handling when an unrecoverable hardware error has occurred	3-20
Table 3-7	Command handling when the library is Not Ready	3-23

INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h)

Table 4-1	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a cartridge scan in a storage location	4-4
Table 4-2	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a request to check the occupied status of a storage location	4-5
Table 4-3	Effect on the cartridge inventory when the library is unable to read a cartridge label in a storage location or in a tape drive (cartridge ejected)	4-6
Table 4-4	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive	4-7
Table 4-5	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive with a data cartridge loaded	4-7
Table 4-6	Invalid parameters in the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS CDB . .	4-11

INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h)

Table 5-1	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a cartridge scan in a storage location	5-5
Table 5-2	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a request to check the occupied status of a storage location	5-5
Table 5-3	Effect on the cartridge inventory of an unsuccessful cartridge scan in a storage location or in a tape drive (cartridge ejected)	5-6
Table 5-4	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive	5-7
Table 5-5	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive with a cartridge inside the drive	5-7
Table 5-6	Invalid parameters in the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE CDB	5-11

INQUIRY (12h)

Table 6-1	Invalid parameters in the INQUIRY CDB	6-10
------------------	---	------

LOG SENSE (4Dh)

Table 7-1	Valid values for the Page Code field	7-3
Table 7-2	Library system statistics (saved in nonvolatile memory)	7-9
Table 7-3	Log parameters for digital sensors	7-10
Table 7-4	Log parameters for the analog sensors	7-10
Table 7-5	Invalid parameters in the LOG SENSE CDB	7-21

MODE SELECT (15h)

Table 8-1	MODE SELECT page lengths	8-3
Table 8-2	Invalid parameters in the MODE SELECT CDB and mode data	8-15

MODE SENSE (1Ah)

Table 9-1	Invalid parameters in the MODE SENSE CDB	9-17
------------------	--	------

MOVE MEDIUM (A5h)

Table 10-1	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful move operation	10-3
Table 10-2	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a move operation when the source is empty	10-4
Table 10-3	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a move operation when the destination is full	10-5
Table 10-4	Effect on the cartridge inventory of a move operation when the source and destination are the same	10-6
Table 10-5	Invalid parameters in the MOVE MEDIUM CDB and move errors	10-12

POSITION TO ELEMENT (2Bh)

Table 11-1	Invalid parameters in POSITION TO ELEMENT CDB and position errors	11-5
-------------------	---	------

READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h)

Table 13-1	ASC and ASCQ values for abnormal element conditions	13-15
Table 13-2	Invalid parameters in the READ ELEMENT STATUS CDB	13-20

READ FIRMWARE (D0h)

Table 14-1	Invalid parameters in the READ FIRMWARE CDB	14-5
-------------------	---	------

RELEASE (17h)

Table 16-1	Invalid parameters in the RELEASE CDB	16-4
-------------------	---	------

REQUEST SENSE (03h)

Table 17-1	Sense key descriptions	17-4
Table 17-2	Meaning of Sense Key Specific field for Illegal Request (5h)	17-5

REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h)

Table 18-1	ASC and ASCQ values for abnormal element conditions	18-15
Table 18-2	Invalid parameters in the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS CDB	18-19

RESERVE (16h)

Table 19-1	Invalid parameters in the RESERVE CDB and element descriptor data	19-9
-------------------	---	------

SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh)

Table 20-1	Parameter List Length valid values	20-3
Table 20-2	Diagnostic tests available for the library	20-6
Table 20-3	Invalid parameters in the SEND DIAGNOSTIC CDB	20-10

SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h)

Table 21-1	Invalid parameters in the SEND VOLUME TAG CDB and parameter list	21-8
-------------------	--	------

WRITE FIRMWARE (D1h)

Table 23-1	Invalid parameters in the WRITE FIRMWARE CDB and errors in programming the flash EEPROMs	23-8
-------------------	--	------

Library Message Processing

Table B-1	When the library responds to the Attention signal	B-2
Table B-2	Messages supported by the library	B-3
Table B-3	Handling of Initiator Detected Error message	B-11
Table B-4	When the library aborts motion commands	B-12
Table B-5	How the library handles a Message Reject message	B-15
Table B-6	Handling of Message Parity Error message	B-16
Table B-7	Library action when the first Identify message is valid	B-17
Table B-8	Handling of valid Identify message with the same LUN as for the first Identify message	B-17
Table B-9	Handling of invalid Identify message with different LUN	B-18
Table B-10	Handling of invalid Identify message with reserved bits 3, 4, or 5 set	B-18

LCD Character Set

Table C-1	Hexadecimal values for LCD characters	C-2
------------------	---	-----

Error Codes

Table D-1	ASC and ASCQ values for the Not Ready (2h) sense key	D-1
Table D-2	ASC and ASCQ values for the Hardware Error (4h) sense key	D-2
Table D-3	ASC and ASCQ values for the Illegal Request (5h) sense key	D-6
Table D-4	ASC and ASCQ values for the Unit Attention (6h) sense key	D-8
Table D-5	ASC and ASCQ values for the Aborted Command (Bh) sense key	D-8

About This Manual

This manual provides reference information for developing SCSI applications for the EXABYTE® EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Libraries (referred to collectively as the *library*). Note that SCSI operations performed by the library are separate from the SCSI operations performed by the enclosed tape drives. For SCSI operations as they relate to the tape drives, refer to the SCSI Reference for the tape drive.

Contents of This Manual

This manual contains the following information:

- **Chapter 1** contains information about elements in the library, SCSI bus phases, SCSI messages, the SCSI command set, and common SCSI operations.
- **Chapter 2** contains information about how the library operates as a device in a SCSI environment, including an overview of the control modes and common SCSI operations. It also describes how the library tracks data cartridges.
- **Chapter 3** contains information about the general conditions that the library checks and the errors that can occur during the Command phase.
- **Chapters 4 through 23** contain information about individual SCSI commands. For ease of reference, the commands are listed in alphabetical order.
- **Appendix A** describes how the library handles errors during different SCSI bus phases.
- **Appendix B** provides in-depth information about how the library processes SCSI messages during different SCSI bus phases.
- **Appendix C** provides a table listing the hexadecimal values for the LCD character set.
- **Appendix D** provides reference information for library errors.

Conventions Used in This Manual

This manual uses the conventions shown below to highlight notes, important information, and cautions. Take special note of boxed text. Failure to follow cautions can result in equipment damage.

Note: Read *Notes* for additional information or suggestions about the topic or procedure being discussed.

► **Important** Read the information in *Important* notices to learn crucial information about the topic being discussed.

CAUTION

Read the information in *CAUTION* boxes to learn how to avoid damaging equipment or losing data.

Related Publications

This manual provides guidelines for implementing the library's SCSI command set. The following publications list additional, related information.

EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Libraries

- *EXB-210 8mm Library Product Specification*, 510807
- *EXB-220 8mm Library Product Specification*, 316413
- *EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Libraries Installation and Operation*, 510808
- *Exabyte Bar Code Label Specification for 8mm Cartridges*, 308607

Standards

For information about the standards used for the library, refer to the following publications:

- *ANSI Small Computer System Interface (SCSI)*, X3.131-1989
- *ANSI Small Computer System Interface-2 (SCSI-2)*, X3T9/89-042
- *ANSI Helical-Scan Digital Computer Tape Cartridge*, X3B5/89-136, Rev. 6
- *EIA Rack Standards*, RS-310-B

Notes

1

Overview of the Library as a SCSI Device

This chapter provides background information for understanding how EXABYTE® EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Libraries operate as devices on a SCSI bus. It provides an overview of the following:

- General features of the library
- Library control modes
- The library's relationship to the SCSI bus
- The elements of the library
- SCSI bus communication, including bus phases, messages, commands, and statuses

1.1 General Features

This section describes the features of the EXB-210 (see Figure 1-1) and EXB-220 (see Figure 1-2). Both libraries are available in two configurations: a rack-mount version in which the library components are aligned horizontally with the tape drives to the left, and a standalone version in which the library components are aligned vertically with the tape drives at the bottom.

Either library offers the following features:

- One or two Exabyte 8mm tape drives. These tape drives offer high speed, high capacity data storage and retrieval.
- A robotic handler, also referred to as the *cartridge handling mechanism* (CHM). The CHM automatically moves data cartridges between the enclosed data cartridge magazine or magazines and the tape drives.
- A bar code scanner installed on the CHM (optional for the EXB-210, standard for the EXB-220). The library uses the bar code scanner to read bar code labels on the cartridges.

- Up to 10 or 20 data cartridges, as follows: The EXB-210 includes one data cartridge magazine with ten cartridge slots. The EXB-220 includes two data cartridge magazines with ten cartridge slots each for a total of 20 data cartridges.
- A fixed cartridge slot that can be used to hold a cleaning cartridge for the tape drives.

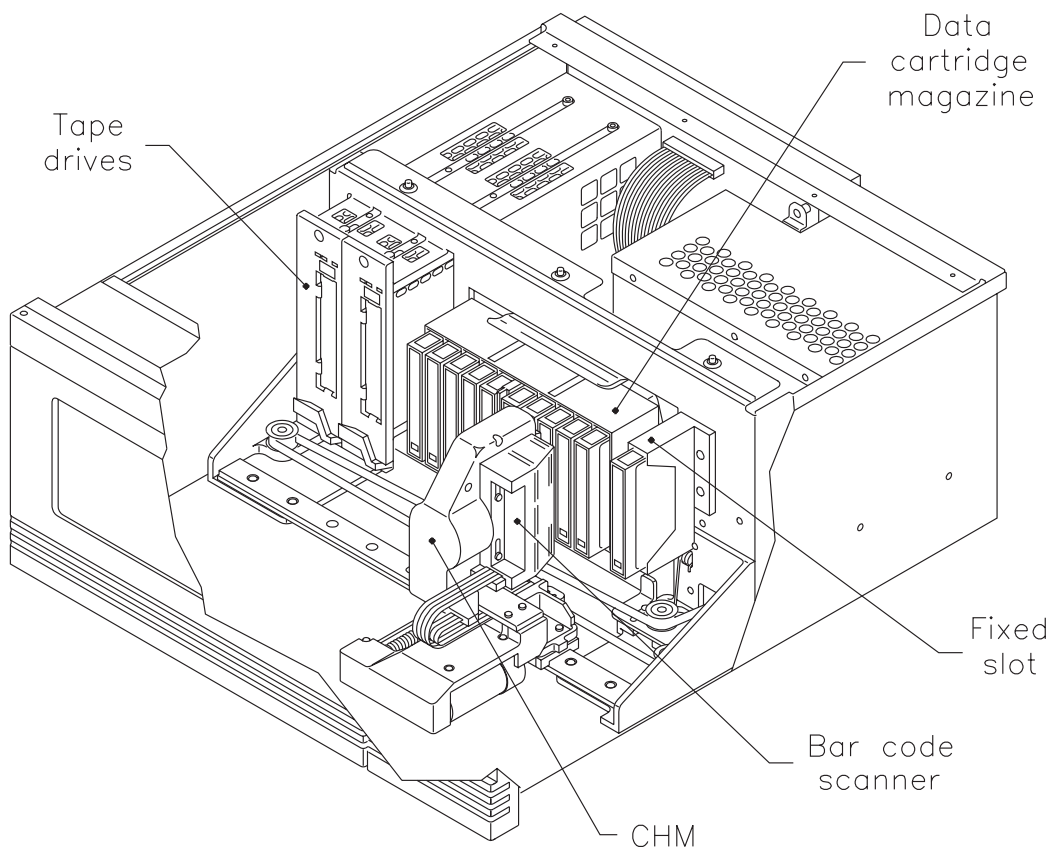


Figure 1-1 EXB-210 with cover removed (rack-mount version shown)

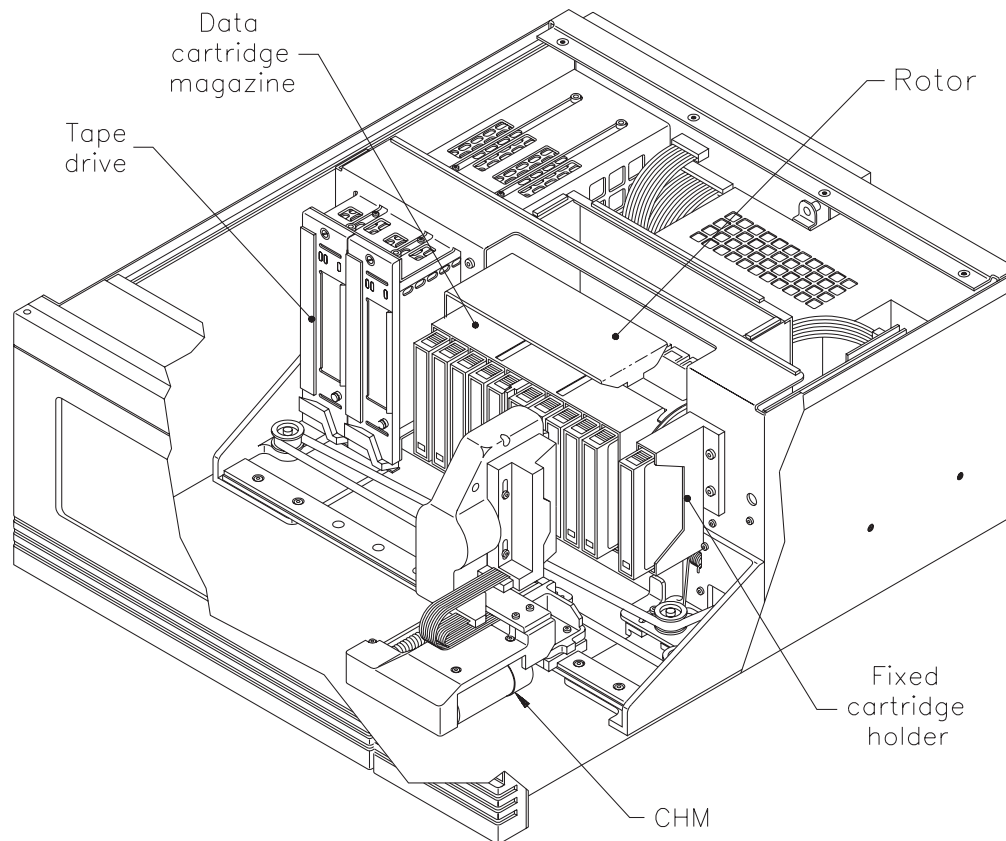


Figure 1-2 EXB-220 with cover removed (rack-mount version shown)

1.2 Control Modes

The library can operate in any of the following control modes:

- **SCSI Interface mode**, in which CHM motion is controlled by a SCSI driver. In this mode, the CHM retrieves and replaces cartridges in an order you specify through the SCSI-2 command set.
- **LCD Interface mode**, in which CHM motion is controlled by a user from the operator panel.
- **Sequential 1 and Sequential 2 modes**, in which CHM motion is controlled by the library's internal firmware. In sequential mode, the CHM picks and places cartridges sequentially from the data cartridge magazine and processes them in either tape drive 1 or tape drive 2, depending on which mode is selected. You can use a sequential mode to operate the library as a "stacker" if your application software does not support the EXB-210 or EXB-220.

- **Dual Sequential mode**, in which CHM motion is controlled by the library's internal firmware. In dual sequential mode, the CHM sequentially processes cartridges in both tape drives simultaneously, as follows: For the EXB-210, the data cartridges in slots 1 through 5 are processed in tape drive 1, and the data cartridges in slots 6 through 10 are processed in tape drive 2 (see Figure 1-3). For the EXB-220, the data cartridges in slots 1 through 10 (magazine 1) are processed in tape drive 1, and the data cartridges in slots 11 through 20 (magazine 2) are processed in tape drive 2 (see Figure 1-4).

You can use Dual Sequential mode to operate the library as a “stacker” if your application software does not support the EXB-210 or EXB-220.

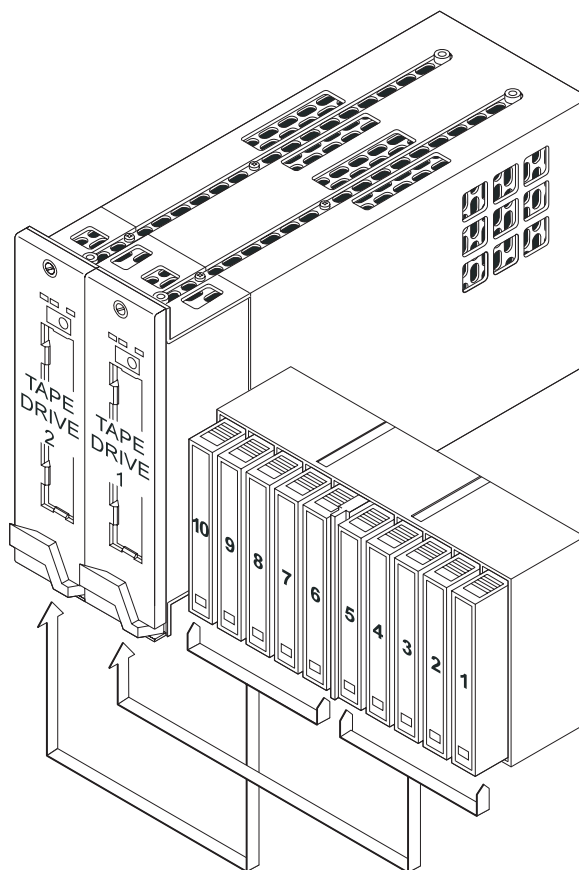


Figure 1-3 Data cartridge slot assignments for Dual Sequential mode for the EXB-210

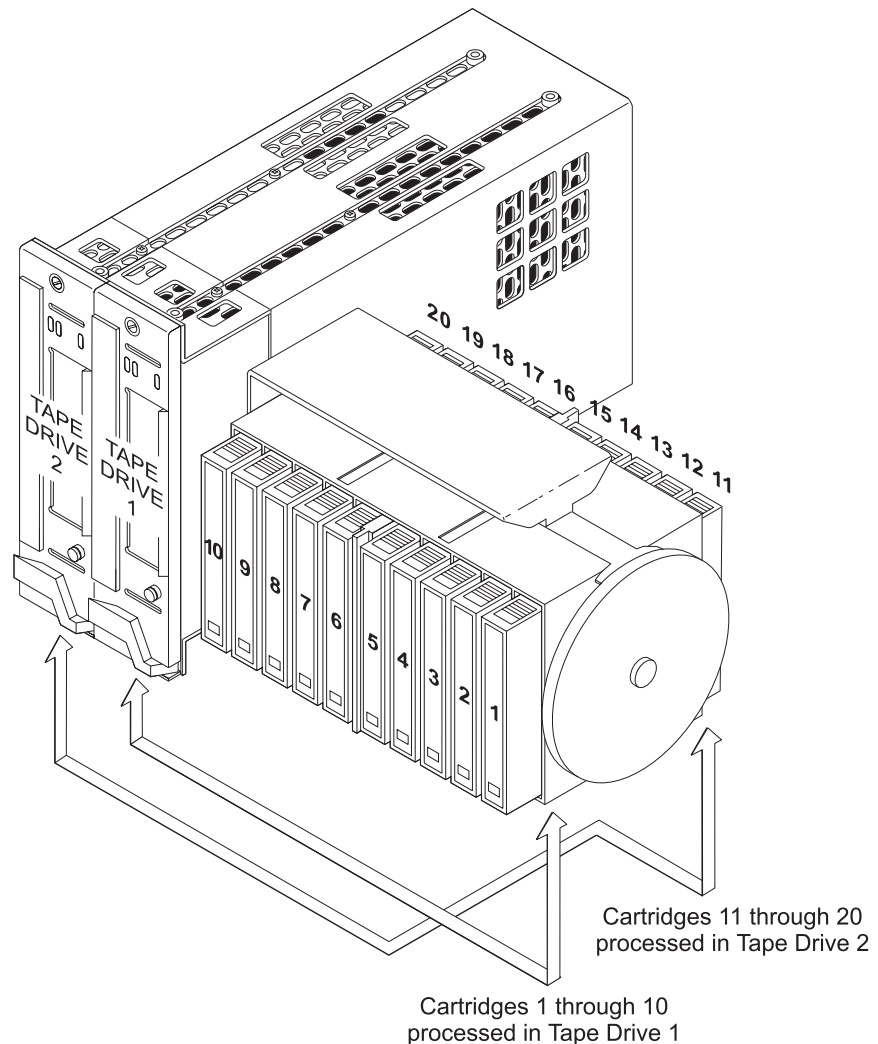


Figure 1-4 Data cartridge slot assignments for Dual Sequential mode for the EXB-220

- **25-pin and 9-Pin serial port modes or 25/9-pin serial port mode**, in which CHM motion is controlled by a console interface program (such as Exabyte's CHSTERM) that accesses the library's resident firmware. In the serial port mode, you operate the library independently of the SCSI bus, using a keyboard and monitor connected with a serial cable to the library's serial port. The port may be either a 25-pin or 9-pin connector, or it may be a combination 25/9 pin connector.

You can also use the 25-pin or 9-pin serial port to upgrade the tape drive firmware or use the 9-pin serial port to upgrade the library firmware. You can use either port to create diagnostic listings from the library. You do not need to change to the serial port control mode to perform these functions. For detailed information about using these ports, refer to *EXB-210 Maintenance* or *EXB-220 Maintenance*.

Note: You can issue SCSI commands to the library in any of the control modes. However, the library must be in SCSI Interface mode if you want to control CHM motion with SCSI commands.

Refer to *EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation* for instructions for using the operator panel to switch among these control modes.

1.3 Relationship to the SCSI Bus

The Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) is a standard that enables a host computer and peripheral equipment, such as the library and its tape drives, to communicate. The library and the tape drives each include independent SCSI controllers, and each supports independent sets of SCSI-2 commands.

The physical components of the SCSI system consist of the following:

- **Initiator.** A computer equipped with a SCSI bus adapter card which allows it to send commands, messages, and data across the SCSI bus to targets such as the library or tape drives. The initiator can also receive data, messages, and status from the targets.
- **Targets.** Devices capable of receiving commands from an initiator. The library and tape drives are independent targets. The library is the target for cartridge inventory and movement operations. The tape drives are the targets for read and write operations.
- **SCSI bus.** The SCSI cables that connect the SCSI bus adapter card to the library, tape drives, and other devices form the SCSI bus and provide a pathway for passing information between the initiator and the targets. Each device attached to a SCSI bus has a unique SCSI ID that identifies it during communication. Each SCSI bus attached to the library must be terminated at both ends.

The EXB-210 can be attached to either one or two SCSI buses. If the EXB-210 is attached to two buses, the library and tape drive 1 are on one bus and tape drive 2 is on the other bus.

The EXB-220 can be attached to up to three SCSI buses (one for each tape drive and one for the library itself).

The library is available in single-ended or differential SCSI configurations. In addition, the EXB-220 is available in narrow and wide SCSI configurations. The EXB-210 is available in a narrow SCSI configuration only.

In narrow SCSI configurations, up to eight devices (including one or more initiators) can be attached to each SCSI bus. SCSI IDs can range from 0 to 7 for each bus. In wide SCSI configurations, up to 16 devices (including one or more initiators) can be attached to each SCSI bus. SCSI IDs can range from 0 to 15 for each bus.

► **Important** You cannot mix tape drive models or SCSI configurations within the same library.

1.4 Elements and Element Addresses

When you issue SCSI commands to the library, you may need to specify an *element address* to identify a specific location (called an *element*). The library contains the following types of elements:

- **Medium transport element.** The cartridge handling mechanism (CHM) is the medium transport element that moves the cartridges in the library.
- **Storage elements.** The cartridge slots in the library's data cartridge magazine are the storage elements that store the cartridges while they are not being used in the tape drives. The fixed cartridge slot is the storage element for a cleaning cartridge.
- **Data transfer elements.** The 8mm tape drives are the data transfer elements that read and write data. You can have either one or two drives in the library. Each tape drive has its own SCSI ID and responds to tape drive-specific SCSI commands.

Each of the elements in the library has a default element address, shown in Figure 1-5 and Figure 1-6. Explanations of how you use the element addresses and how you can change them are provided in Chapter 2.

Note: When you use LCD diagnostic functions from the operator panel, you indicate locations by specifying *element indexes*. Element indexes are identical to the default element addresses. However, element indexes are permanently coded in the library's firmware and cannot be changed. This means that even if you have changed the library's element addresses from their defaults, you must always use the defaults (the element indexes) when performing operator panel diagnostics.

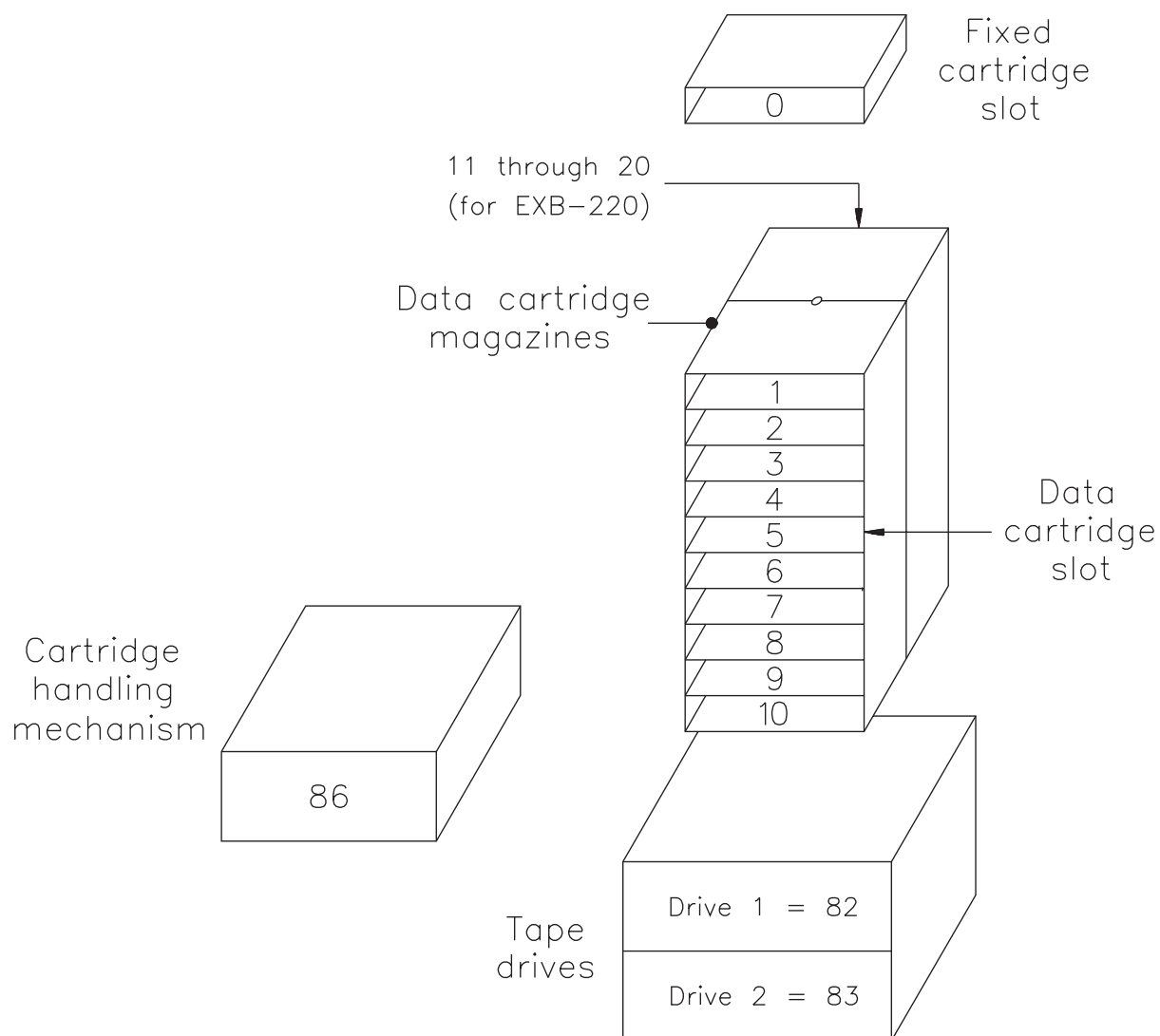


Figure 1-5 Default element addresses (element indexes) for the standalone library

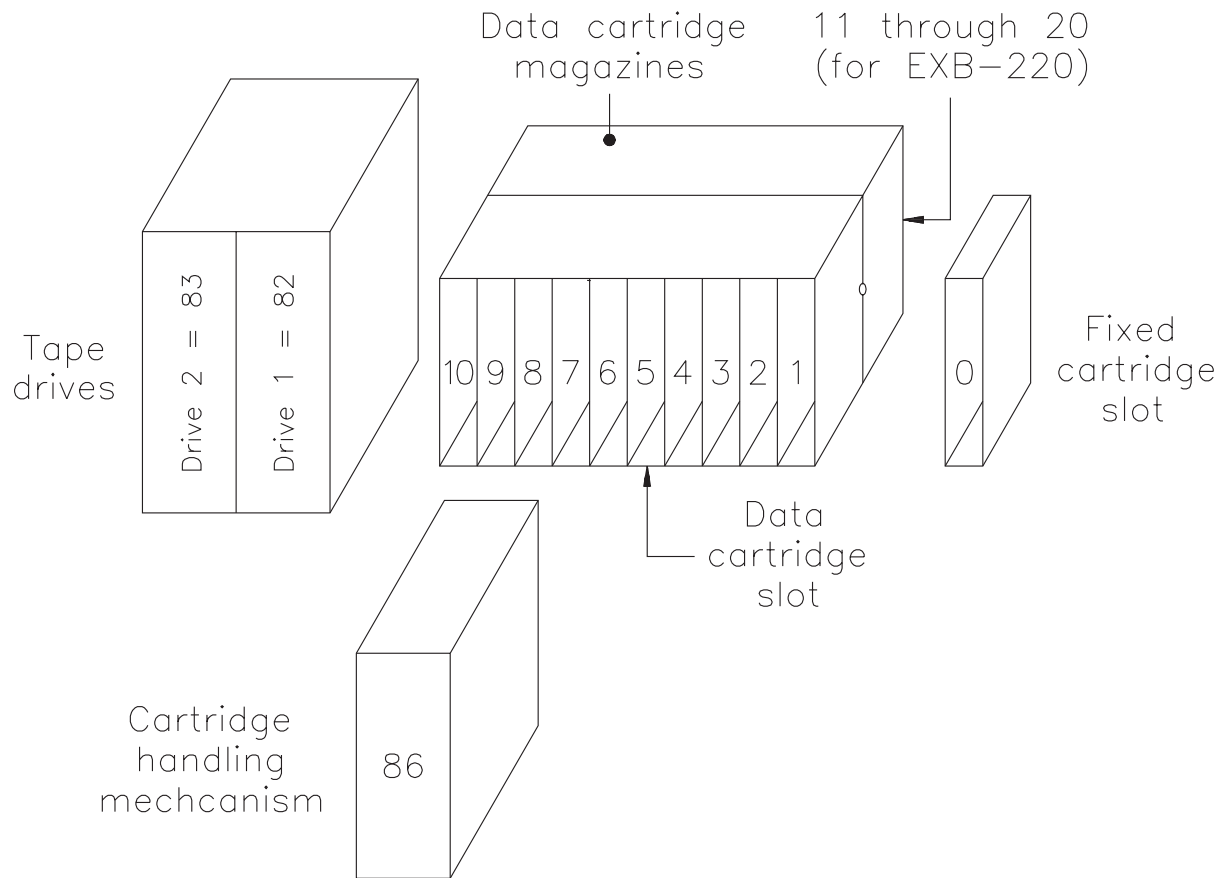


Figure 1-6 Default element addresses (element indexes) for the rack-mount library

1.5 Communication across the SCSI Bus

This section explains how communication across the SCSI bus is implemented. It discusses the SCSI bus phases, messages, commands, and statuses supported by the library.

SCSI Bus Phases

Bus phases determine the direction and type of information transferred across the data lines of the SCSI bus. The possible bus phases include Bus Free, Arbitration, Selection, Reselection, and Transfer (which includes four subsets: Message In or Message Out, Command Out, Data In or Data Out, and Status In). Table 1-1 describes the bus phases.

Note: For information about how the library responds to errors during different bus phases, refer to Appendix A.

Table 1-1 SCSI bus phases and information transfer phases

Bus phase	Description
Bus Free	The Bus Free phase specifies that no device is using the bus.
Arbitration	The Arbitration phase allows devices to compete for access on the bus.
Selection	The Selection phase allows an initiator to select the library for communication.
Reselection	The Reselection phase allows the library to reconnect to the initiator after it disconnects.
Transfer:	
Message In/ Message Out	The Message phases help manage the physical path between the initiators and targets. In the Message In phase, the library sends a message to the initiator. In the Message Out phase, the initiator sends a message to the library.
Command Out	In the Command Out phase, the initiator sends a command to the library. Commands contain information about what actions the library should perform.
Data In/ Data Out	In the Data In phase, the library transfers data to the initiator. In the Data Out phase, the initiator transfers data to the library.
Status In	In the Status In phase, the library returns a status byte to the initiator after every command operation. The status byte indicates the results of the command's execution.

SCSI Messages

The SCSI message system allows communication between an initiator and the library for physical path management. Messages allow the initiator and the library to manage error detection, data transfer retries, and the data path.

The library supports the SCSI messages listed in Table 1-2. For a more in-depth discussion of these messages and a description of the actions performed by the library in response to these messages, refer to Appendix B.

Note: One or more messages can be sent during a single message phase.

Table 1-2 SCSI messages supported by the library

Message	Hex Value	Description	Direction	
			In (Library to initiator)	Out (Initiator to library)
Command Complete	00h	The library informs the initiator that the execution of the command was completed and that it sent a valid status byte to the initiator.	✓	
Extended Messages*	01h	Synchronous Data Transfer Request (01h) The initiator starts negotiations for synchronous data transfer. The library negotiates down to asynchronous data transfer.	✓	✓
		Wide Data Transfer Request (03h) The initiator starts negotiations for wide data transfer. The library negotiates down to narrow data transfer.	✓	✓
Restore Pointers	03h	The library informs the initiator that it did not properly receive a block of data or the command descriptor block (CDB) and that the data needs to be transferred again.	✓	
Disconnect	04h	The library informs the initiator that it plans to disconnect from the SCSI bus and that a reconnect will be required later.	✓	
Initiator Detected Error	05h	The initiator informs the library that an error occurred. The library can retry the operation.		✓

Message	Hex Value	Description	Direction	
			In (Library to initiator)	Out (Initiator to library)
Abort	06h	The initiator is clearing the present and any pending operation for that initiator. When the library accepts this message, it releases the bus into the Bus Free phase.		✓
Message Reject	07h	Either the initiator or the library is indicating that the last message received was inappropriate or not implemented.	✓	✓
No Operation	08h	The initiator informs the library that it does not have a valid message to send in response to the library's request for a message.		✓
Message Parity Error	09h	The initiator informs the library that one or more bytes in the last message it received had a parity error.		✓
Bus Device Reset	0Ch	The initiator instructs the library to reset all of its current I/O operations for all initiators. The library releases the SCSI bus into the Bus Free phase, with no operations pending for any initiator, and performs a reset. (See page 2-4 for more information about resetting the library.)		✓
Identify	80h or C0h	This message is used to establish a physical path connection between the initiator and the library. It also indicates whether disconnect is supported and the LUN for which the command is intended. The library supports a LUN of 0.	✓	✓

* Exabyte Mammoth wide tape drives within the library support wide or synchronous data transfer, but the library itself negotiates down to narrow or asynchronous data transfer. See page B-4 for more information.

SCSI Commands

Table 1-3 lists the SCSI commands supported by the library.

Note: The commands issued to the library are independent of the commands issued to the tape drives. For information about the commands for the tape drives, refer to the SCSI reference for the tape drive.

Table 1-3 SCSI commands supported by the library

OP Code	Command	Discussed in...
00h	TEST UNIT READY (6 bytes)	Chapter 22
03h	REQUEST SENSE (6 bytes)	Chapter 17
07h	INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (6 bytes)	Chapter 4
12h	INQUIRY (6 bytes)	Chapter 6
15h	MODE SELECT (6 bytes)	Chapter 8
16h	RESERVE (6 bytes)	Chapter 19
17h	RELEASE (6 bytes)	Chapter 16
1Ah	MODE SENSE (6 bytes)	Chapter 9
1Ch	RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (6 bytes)	Chapter 15
1Dh	SEND DIAGNOSTIC (6 bytes)	Chapter 20
1Eh	PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (6 bytes)	Chapter 12
2Bh	POSITION TO ELEMENT (10 bytes)	Chapter 11
4Dh	LOG SENSE (10 bytes)	Chapter 7
A5h	MOVE MEDIUM (12 bytes)	Chapter 10
B5h	REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (12 bytes)	Chapter 18
B6h	SEND VOLUME TAG (12 bytes)	Chapter 21
B8h	READ ELEMENT STATUS (12 bytes)	Chapter 13
D0h	READ FIRMWARE (12 bytes)*	Chapter 14
D1h	WRITE FIRMWARE (12 bytes)*	Chapter 23
E7h	INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (10 bytes)*	Chapter 5

* The INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE, READ FIRMWARE, and WRITE FIRMWARE commands are Exabyte-unique commands.

Chapters 4 through 23 contain the detailed descriptions of the SCSI commands supported by the library. The commands are arranged in alphabetical order with each command starting in a new chapter. For ease of reference, the command name and operation code (OP code) are included in the header at the top of each page.

SCSI Command Format

The library uses six-, ten-, and twelve-byte commands, whose formats are described in the SCSI-2 standard. Any command descriptor block (CDB) fields that are specific to the library for a given command are described in the command chapter. This section describes the CDB fields that are common for every command.

Note: Any errors caused by illegal parameters in a CDB or parameter list for a particular command are listed at the end of the command chapter. Errors of this type return a sense key of Illegal Request (5h).

Logical Unit Number (LUN) Field The library is a single device target and does not support multiple devices. The library only supports a LUN of 0. The LUN field for each CDB should be set to 0. Note that if the Identify message is sent before the CDB, the LUN field in the CDB is ignored. However, the LUN field in the Identify message must be set to 0.

Reserved Fields The word *Reserved* (or *RSVD*) in a field definition for a SCSI command refers to fields defined as reserved by the SCSI-2 standard. The library checks these fields for a value of 0. If a 0 is not present, the library returns Check Condition status with a sense key of Illegal Request (5h).

Control Byte The vendor unique portion of the Control byte (as indicated in the SCSI-2 standard) is defined for each specific command, if used. The library does not support linked commands or recognize the Flag bit.

Fields Not Implemented The field description, “This field not supported by the library,” indicates that the field is supported by the SCSI-2 standard, but is not implemented in the library.

Note: Any errors caused by illegal parameters in a CDB or parameter list for a particular command are listed at the end of the command chapter. Errors of this type return a sense key of Illegal Request (5h).

SCSI Command Status Bytes

The library sends one status byte to the initiator in response to each command.

Table 1-4 contains a summary of the status bytes used by the library. Chapter 3 contains descriptions of the conditions that are checked and the order in which they are checked to enable the library to determine status after receiving a command.

Table 1-4 SCSI command status bytes supported by the library

Status	Hex Value	Description
Good	00h	Indicates that the library successfully completed the operation specified by the CDB.
Check Condition	02h	Indicates an error, exception, or abnormal condition that has caused sense information to be set.
Busy	08h	Indicates that the library is unable to accept a command from an initiator.
Reservation Conflict	18h	Indicates that the elements identified in the command are reserved by another initiator.

Note: The library may go to the Bus Free phase without reporting status in response to a command sequence. If this happens, immediately issue a REQUEST SENSE (03h) command to determine the cause of the unexpected disconnect.

Status Descriptions

The following are expanded descriptions of the status bytes listed in Table 1-4.

Good The library returns Good status to indicate that the operation specified by the CDB completed normally.

Check Condition The library returns Check Condition status to indicate that an error has occurred while it is executing a command. The library reports Check Condition status as soon as it detects the error unless it is disconnected from the SCSI bus. If the library is disconnected, it reports Check Condition status after the reconnect process.

Examples of situations that result in Check Condition status are listed below:

The library detects a SCSI message error. For example, if immediately following selection, the initiator sends an Identify message with the reserved bits set to a value other than 0, the library returns Check Condition status.

You send an Identify message with an invalid LUN or a command other than INQUIRY or REQUEST SENSE with an invalid LUN without first sending a valid Identify message.

You send a command other than INQUIRY or REQUEST SENSE when there is a pending Unit Attention condition of the library.

The library has an unrecoverable hardware error and receives a motion command.

The library is not ready when it receives a motion command. For example, the library is not ready when it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a sequential mode, or a serial port mode (see page 3-24 for more information about the Not Ready condition).

You set a reserved field to a value other than 0 in the CDB or the parameter list for the requested command.

You specify an invalid parameter in the CDB or parameter list for the requested command.

The command fails for one of the reasons listed in the command chapter. For example, a MOVE MEDIUM command terminates with Check Condition status if the source for the move is empty.

For specific situations that return Check Condition status, refer to the command descriptions in Chapters 4 through 23.

Busy The library returns Busy status to any initiator that sends a command other than INQUIRY or REQUEST SENSE when the library is disconnected from the SCSI bus or when it is waiting for a SCSI motion process to be aborted.

If allowed, the library disconnects from the SCSI bus when performing any lengthy operations, such as a move operation.

The library aborts motion processes in response to an Abort message from the initiator that requested the motion command. The library has to abort the motion process completely before it can process commands other than INQUIRY and REQUEST SENSE.

Reservation Conflict The library returns Reservation Conflict status to indicate that either the entire library or the elements requested to be accessed are currently reserved by another initiator. This status is reported until the initiator that reserved the library or elements issues a RELEASE (17h) command or a reset condition occurs.

Notes

2 Implementing SCSI Operations

This chapter provides information about performing the following common SCSI operations:

- Controlling parity checking
- Disconnecting from the SCSI bus
- Resetting the library
- Setting element addresses
- Using the cartridge inventory
- Moving cartridges
- Reserving elements
- Inquiring about the status of a specific operation
- Performing diagnostic tests
- Copying firmware

For detailed information about the SCSI commands that the library uses to perform these operations, refer to Chapters 4 through 23.

2.1 Controlling Parity Checking

When it receives data (commands, messages, and so on) across the SCSI bus from the initiator, the library can check this information for parity and notify you if a parity error has occurred. You can use either of the following methods to enable or disable parity checking:

- **Set the Parity bit on the Parity page in the MODE SELECT (15h) command** (refer to Chapter 8). If you specify that you want to save the MODE SELECT parameters, the library saves this setting in nonvolatile memory and uses it whenever it is powered on or reset.

- **Set the parity option through the operator panel** (refer to the operating instructions provided with your library). This setting overrides the current MODE SELECT setting and becomes the new saved setting. The library saves this setting in nonvolatile memory and uses it whenever it is powered on or reset.

Note: The last change to the parity setting takes precedence.

When the library is shipped from the factory, parity checking is enabled. That is, the LCD parity option is set to ON, and the Parity bit in the Mode parameters is set to 1. Table 2-1 summarizes how to change the parity setting.

Table 2-1 Enabling and disabling parity checking

If you want parity checking to be...	Use <i>either</i> of the following methods...	
	Set the LCD parity option to...	Set the MODE SELECT Parity bit to...
Enabled	ON	1
Disabled	OFF	0

Setting the Maximum Number of Parity Retries

If parity checking is enabled, you can specify the maximum number of times the library will retry a message out phase, command out phase, or data out phase when a parity error occurs. Specify a value between 0 and 255 for the Maximum Parity Retries field on the Parity page of the MODE SELECT command (refer to Chapter 8). The factory default is 1 retry.

2.2 Disconnecting from the SCSI Bus

The library disconnects from the SCSI bus to process a command that requires a lengthy amount of time, thereby freeing the SCSI bus to allow another I/O process to occur. The library can disconnect from the SCSI bus only if it has been granted permission to do so by the initiator. To grant the library permission to disconnect, do the following:

1. Select the library with the Attention signal to enable the message system.
2. Send the library an Identify message (C0h) with the DiscPriv bit set to 1.

If an initiator grants the library permission to disconnect and then makes a request to process a command that requires a lengthy amount of time, the following occurs:

1. The library disconnects from the SCSI bus to process the command. It does not send a Save Data Pointers message to the initiator.
2. When the library is finished processing the command, it arbitrates for the SCSI bus.
3. Upon winning arbitration, the library reselects the initiator and sends an Identify message to the initiator.

This revives the I_T_L nexus (initiator-target-LUN connection) so that the initiator can retrieve the correct set of pointers for the I/O process.

4. The initiator restores the active pointers to their most recent saved values (which, in this case, are the initial values), and the library completes the I/O process.

While disconnected, processing the command, or trying to reconnect to the initiator, the library returns Busy status to other initiators requesting commands other than REQUEST SENSE (03h) and INQUIRY (12h). If the same initiator selects the library to request another command, an Invalid Initiator Reselection occurs. (See Chapter 3 for more information.)

2.3 Resetting the Library

You can use any of the following methods to reset the library and its tape drives.

CAUTION

Powering off the library will reset the SCSI bus. To prevent possible loss of data, make sure that all devices attached to the SCSI bus are inactive and have completed all requested operations before powering off the library.

- **Power-on reset.** Power the library off and back on again to reset the library and its tape drives.
- **Operator panel reset.** Press **Reset** on the operator panel to reset the library and its tape drives. A confirmation screen allows you to cancel or proceed with the Reset.
- **SCSI bus reset.** Send a RST pulse on the SCSI bus for a minimum of 25 μ sec. A SCSI bus reset immediately clears all devices from the bus, resets their associated equipment, and terminates all pending I/O processes.
- **SCSI Bus Device Reset message.** Issue a Bus Device Reset (0Ch) message to the library or one of the tape drives to reset the individual device. A Bus Device Reset message clears the device from the bus, causes all commands sent to it to be cleared, and terminates all pending I/O processes. Note that a Bus Device Reset message received by the library does not reset the tape drives or the SCSI bus.
- **Remote hardware reset.** Plug a cable into the remote reset connector and press a reset button on the cable (see the *EXB-210 Product Specification* or *EXB-220 Product Specification* for more information).

Notes:

- If a SCSI bus or device reset occurs during a power-on reset, the power-on reset will be restarted.
- If the library is performing a cartridge move operation when it is reset, it finishes the move operation as soon as the reset is complete.

Effect of Power-on, Operator Panel, and Remote Hardware Resets

The power-on, operator panel, or remote hardware reset has the following effects:

- If the library is connected to the SCSI bus, the SCSI bus goes to the Bus Free phase.
- The checksum of the flash EEPROM code is validated.
- All library parameters are reset to their default states.
- The library performs its power-on self-test.
- For power-on or remote hardware resets of the library, both tape drives are reset and perform their power-on self test.

After a power-on reset, the library will respond on the SCSI bus within three seconds.

Note: Mammoth tape drives perform a logical reset for non-power-on resets.

Effect of SCSI Bus and Bus Device Resets

A SCSI bus reset or device reset has the following effects:

- If the library is connected to the SCSI bus, the SCSI bus goes to the Bus Free phase.
- All library parameters are reset to their default states.
- The library performs its power-on self-test.
- A SCSI bus reset also resets the tape drives that are on the same SCSI bus. The tape drives then perform their power-on self tests.

Note: Mammoth tape drives perform a logical reset for non-power-on resets.

After a SCSI bus or device reset, the library will respond on the SCSI bus within 250 msec.

Note: If the device that supplies SCSI bus terminator power is powered off, the RST line is left in an indeterminate state (either reset or not, depending on the voltages). It may be impossible to communicate with the library. To avoid this situation, you may want to place the library at the end of the SCSI bus so that you have an external terminator on one of the library's SCSI connectors.

2.4 Setting Element Addresses

If you want, you can assign different element addresses to the library's elements (storage, data transfer, and medium transport elements). You may want to do this to create a single "virtual" library from multiple libraries on multiple SCSI buses. By assigning unique element addresses to every element in all of the libraries in your system, you can ensure that cartridges can be easily located no matter which library they are in.

Figure 1-5 on page 1-8 and Figure 1-6 on page 1-9 show the default element addresses assigned to each element in the library. When assigning new addresses, for example, to the storage elements (cartridge slots and fixed slot), you assign the first number to the fixed slot and the library automatically assigns the others sequentially.

To assign different element addresses, use the MODE SELECT (15h) command. To view the current addresses, use the MODE SENSE (1Ah) command, view the assigned element addresses through the operator panel's SCSI menu, or use diagnostic software on a computer connected to one of the serial ports.

2.5 Understanding the Cartridge Inventory

The library maintains a cartridge inventory in nonvolatile memory. The inventory contains information about the following element locations:

- Medium transport element (one CHM)
- Storage elements (10 slots in the data cartridge magazine and one fixed cartridge slot for the EXB-210; 20 cartridge slots in the data cartridge magazines and one fixed cartridge slot for the EXB-220)
- Data transfer elements (up to two tape drives)

The library uses the information stored in the cartridge inventory to process SCSI commands.

Establishing the Cartridge Inventory

The library initially sets up the cartridge inventory during its power-on self-test. The library checks for the presence of data cartridges in the tape drives and the magazines. The library stores this information in the cartridge inventory.

After the cartridge inventory has been established, you can use the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) or INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) command to update the cartridge inventory whenever the integrity of the inventory becomes questionable (for example, after the door has been opened) or whenever you want to read the bar code labels.

Retrieving Cartridge Inventory Information

After the current cartridge inventory has been determined using an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS command, you can retrieve the inventory information by issuing a READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h) command (see Chapter 13).

When the Cartridge Inventory is Questionable

The library must ensure that the data integrity of the cartridge inventory remains intact. The cartridge inventory is reset to a questionable state when there is any possibility that a user manually moved cartridges, added cartridges, removed cartridges, exchanged magazines, or removed or replaced a cartridge in a tape drive. The library's cartridge inventory becomes questionable when:

- The library is powered off and then on
- The library is reset (see Section 2.3)
- The library's door is opened and then closed

Types of Information Stored in the Cartridge Inventory

As described in this section, the cartridge inventory contains the following information for every element location:

- Element index and element address
- Cartridge magazine or tape drive present
- Element occupied status
- Bar code label information (if a bar code scanner is installed)
- Depth and long-axis coordinates
- SCSI element reservation information
- Tape drive accessible status
- Cartridge pick and put (place) retry counts
- Total number of cartridge puts (places)
- Source element address

Element Index and Element Address

The cartridge inventory contains an Element Index and Element Address field for each element location, as follows:

Element Index The Element Index field contains an index number for the element location. The element index is fixed for each element location and cannot be changed. The element indexes are numbered from 0 to 86 and are grouped as follows:

0	Fixed cartridge slot
1 – 10	Cartridge slots (EXB-210)
1 – 20	Cartridge slots (EXB-220)
82 – 83	Tape drives
86	Cartridge handling mechanism (CHM)

You use the element indexes when specifying sources and destinations for operator panel or console move operations.

Element Address The Element Address field contains the address of the element location. You use element addresses to reference element locations when you issue SCSI commands to the library. Unlike element indexes, you can change element addresses if you want. To change element addresses, use the MODE SELECT (15h) command (see Chapter 8). Figure 1-5 on page 1-8 and Figure 1-6 on page 1-9 show the element indexes and the default element addresses for the library.

Present

The Present flag indicates whether a specific magazine or tape drive is installed. If the element index references a storage element, this flag indicates whether that particular magazine is installed. If the element index references a tape drive, this flag indicates whether that particular tape drive is installed.

The values for this flag are as follows:

- 0 – Not installed
- 1 – Installed

Note: This flag is always set to 1 for the CHM and the fixed cartridge slot.

The library performs its initialization process when it is reset, or when the door is opened and then closed. During this process, the library checks to see how many tape drives are installed and whether the magazine or magazines are installed. The Present flag is updated accordingly.

Element Occupied Status

The library uses the Occupied and Occupied Valid flags in the cartridge inventory to determine whether a given element is occupied as follows:

Occupied The Occupied flag indicates whether the library considers the specified element location to contain a data cartridge, as follows:

- 0 – The element location does not contain a data cartridge
- 1 – The element location contains a data cartridge

Occupied Valid The Occupied Valid flag indicates whether the Occupied flag is accurate, as follows:

- 0 – The Occupied flag is questionable (may not be accurate)
- 1 – The Occupied flag is accurate

The Occupied Valid flag is set to 0 after the library is reset or when the door is opened to indicate that a data cartridge could have been added or removed from the location. The Occupied Valid flag is set to 1 when an operation that validates the Occupied flag is performed (for example, an initialize element status or move operation).

Bar Code Label Information

► **Important** This information is available only if a bar code scanner is installed and if bar code labels are attached to each cartridge.

The library uses the following fields in the cartridge inventory to indicate bar code label information:

- Label
- Label Valid
- Label Error
- Label Scan Retries
- Send Volume Match

These fields are used only if you have a bar code scanner installed, you have attached bar code labels to each data cartridge, and you have scanned the labels. Descriptions of these fields follow:

Label If the element location contains a cartridge whose bar code label has been scanned, the Label field contains the cartridge label.

Label Valid The Label Valid field indicates whether the Label field is accurate, as follows:

- 0 – The Label field is not accurate
- 1 – The Label field is accurate

The Label Valid flag is set to 0 after the library is reset or when the door is opened to indicate that a cartridge may have been added or removed from the location. The Label Valid flag is set to 1 when the label is successfully scanned.

Label Error The Label Error field indicates whether the bar code scanner was unable to read the cartridge label, as follows:

- 0 – The bar code scan was successful, a reset condition occurred, or the door was opened
- 60 – The bar code scanner could not read the bar code label because there was no label on the cartridge
- 61 – The bar code scanner could not read the bar code label because the label was unreadable
- 62 – The bar code scanner could not read the bar code label because the data cartridge magazine or the tape drive was not installed.
- 65 – The bar code scanner could not read the bar code label because a Direct Memory Access overrun occurred.
- 67 – The bar code scanner could not read the bar code label because a Direct Memory Access channel timeout occurred.
- 69 – The bar code scanner could not read the bar code label because the label was upside down or grossly misplaced

Label Scan Retries The Label Scan Retries field contains the total number of bar code scanner retries for each cartridge. This field is cleared when the library is reset.

Send Volume Match The Send Volume Match flag indicates whether the cartridge label matched the template sent with the last SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) command, as follows:

- 0 – The label did not match the template
- 1 – The label matched the template

The REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h) command references the Send Volume Match flag and sets it to 0 after the label information is returned to the initiator. This flag is also set to 0 when the library is reset or when the door is opened to indicate that a data cartridge may have been added or removed from the location.

Depth and Long-Axis Coordinates

The cartridge inventory contains the axis positions for each element, as follows:

Depth The Depth field indicates the distance the CHM has to move along the short axis from its home position to touch the magazine or a data cartridge in the magazine. (This field is not used for the CHM.)

Long Axis The Long Axis field indicates the distance the CHM has to move along the long axis from its home position to the specified element location. (This field is not used for the CHM.)

SCSI Element Reservation

Using the RESERVE (16h) command, an initiator can either reserve the entire library as a unit or reserve individual elements or groups of elements for its exclusive use. The library uses three fields to indicate element reservation by an initiator:

Reserved The Reserved flag indicates whether the element is reserved by an initiator, as follows:

- 0 – The element is not reserved
- 1 – The element is reserved

Host ID The Host ID field contains the SCSI ID of the initiator that reserved the element.

Reservation ID The Reservation ID field contains the reservation ID as set in the RESERVE command.

Note: When the library is reset, all reservation information is cleared. For more information about the RESERVE command, see Chapter 19.

Tape Drive Accessible

The Tape Drive Accessible flag indicates whether a tape drive is empty, a cartridge is loaded in the drive, or the cartridge is ejected, as follows:

- 0 – A cartridge may be loaded in the drive
- 1 – The drive is empty, or the cartridge is ejected and ready to be picked

This flag is set to 0 when the library loads a cartridge in the tape drive and after the library is reset or the door is opened.

This flag is set to 1 when the library detects that the tape drive is accessible. The library can detect that the drive is accessible after a move operation, after a cartridge scan operation, or when the tape drive notifies the library that it is accessible.

Cartridge Pick and Put Retry Counts

The Cartridge Pick Retry Counts and Cartridge Put Retry Counts fields indicate the total number of pick retries and the total number of put (place) retries for each element location. These fields are cleared when the library is reset.

Total Number of Cartridge Puts

The Total Number of Cartridge Puts field indicates the total number of put operations for each element location. Each time a cartridge is moved to an element location, the total number of puts for that location is incremented. This field is cleared when the library is reset.

Source Element Address

The Source Element Address field shows the address of the last storage element from which the cartridge was moved.

Whenever the library is reset or the door is opened, the Source Element Address field is set to FFh to indicate that a magazine could have been added or removed from the location. After a subsequent move operation, the Source Element Address field is set to the address of the source cartridge.

2.6 Moving Cartridges

To instruct the library to move cartridges between the storage locations and the tape drives, issue the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command. The MOVE MEDIUM command allows you to specify a source element address and a destination element address for a specific move operation.

2.7 Reserving Elements

To reserve specific cartridge locations, the tape drives, the CHM, or the entire library for exclusive use by one initiator, use the RESERVE (16h) command. For example, if any initiator needs to access specific cartridges, it can issue the RESERVE command to set aside those storage locations so that no other initiator can access the cartridges.

Note: Use the tape drives' RESERVE UNIT command to ensure that the initiator has exclusive use of the drives for tape operations.

Once an initiator has reserved an element or the entire library, the same initiator must use the RELEASE (17h) command to cancel the reservation.

2.8 Inquiring about Library Status

To inquire about library status, you can use the following commands:

TEST UNIT READY (00h) Command

Use this command to determine if the library is ready to accept all other commands, including motion commands. This is not a request for a self-test, which occurs at power-on. This command returns Good status if the library is ready to accept any command without returning Check Condition, Reservation Conflict, or Busy status.

REQUEST SENSE (03h) Command

If an error occurs during an operation, use the REQUEST SENSE (03h) command to determine the type of error. This command returns the following information:

- Sense key for the error indicating the type of error (Not Ready, Hardware Error, Illegal Request, Unit Attention, or Aborted Command)
- Additional sense code (ASC) indicating the type of error in the given sense key category
- Additional sense code qualifier (ASCQ) indicating the specific error in the sense key and ASC categories

Note: This information is also available through the operator panel and the serial ports.

INQUIRY (12h) Command

Use the INQUIRY (12h) command to obtain information about the library's firmware level, the version of SCSI supported by the library, and whether a bar code scanner is installed.

LOG SENSE (4Dh) Command

Use the LOG SENSE command to retrieve the library's statistical and state information. This type of information includes the following:

- Statistics
- History of recent events
- State of the hardware
- Element statistics
- Cartridge scan retries (if a bar code scanner is installed)
- Element position information

2.9 Performing Diagnostics

You can perform diagnostics to find out detailed information about library operations. The SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh) command allows you to run special diagnostic tests. The RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch) command allows you to obtain diagnostic results of library operations.

2.10 Copying Firmware

If you want to copy the firmware from one library to another, or if new firmware becomes available, you can use the READ FIRMWARE (D0h) and WRITE FIRMWARE (D1h) commands.

Use the READ FIRMWARE command to read the firmware from a library's flash memory (EEPROM) and send a copy to the initiator. Use the WRITE FIRMWARE command to load new firmware across the SCSI bus from the initiator to the library's flash memory.

Notes

3 General Command Processing

This chapter describes the general conditions that the library checks and the errors that can occur during the Command phase.

Note: This chapter only describes the processing of a command through the Command phase. If the message system is enabled, additional errors can occur anytime the library responds to ATN with a Message Out phase. For more information about the message system and possible error conditions, see Appendix B).

The sequence of events that occurs when the library receives a command is referred to as *general command processing*. General command processing occurs during the Command phase (that is, after the library is selected by an initiator and when it is in the process of reading the command descriptor block).

General command processing is affected by:

- Whether the message system is enabled when the library is selected
- Which command and parameters were sent

This chapter lists general conditions that the library checks and the effect on each command if the condition occurs. The library checks the conditions in the following order:

1. Error conditions before the library receives the CDB
2. Error conditions while the library is receiving the CDB
3. Invalid logical unit number
4. Invalid initiator reselection condition
5. Reservation conflict condition
6. Busy condition
7. Pending Unit Attention condition

- 8.** Executing ROM boot code
- 9.** Unrecoverable hardware error condition
- 10.** Not Ready condition
- 11.** CDB reserved bit set

Note that if the library can read the CDB successfully and none of these 11 conditions are present, or if they are present but do not affect the requested command, the library checks for any additional conditions specific to the command. For information about the conditions and errors specific to each command, refer to the section called “Command Execution” in the chapter for that command.

Condition 1. Error Conditions Before the CDB is Received

Did an error occur before the library received the CDB?

Note: Error conditions before the CDB is received can occur only when the message system is enabled and the library detects an error during or after the first Message Out phase following selection.

NO

Go to condition 2 (page 3-5).

YES

The library's handling of errors during the first Message Out phase is independent of the requested command, since the command is not yet known. The following errors can occur:

- **Invalid first message.** If the first message received during the Message Out phase following selection is not the Abort message, Bus Device Reset message, or Identify message, the library immediately goes bus free. Sense data is not set because a logical unit number (LUN) has not been established.
- **Invalid Identify message.** If the Identify message has one or more reserved bits set, the library returns Check Condition status and sets the sense data as follows:

Sense Key	Illegal Request (5h)
ASC	Invalid Bits in the Identify Message (3Dh)
ASCQ	0

- **Improper message sequence.** If the initiator sent an improper message sequence (for example, the initiator sends an Identify message followed by a Message Parity Error message), the library returns Check Condition status and sets the sense data as follows:

Sense Key	Aborted Command (Bh)
ASC	Message Error (43h)
ASCQ	0

- **Unexpected SCSI status.** If the library encounters an unusual condition, such as an unexpected status returned from the SCSI hardware, it sets the sense data as follows:

Sense Key	Hardware Error (4h) or Aborted Command (Bh)
ASC	Internal Target Failure (44h)
ASCQ	80h to AFh

When such an error occurs, there may be a problem with the library. If this is the case, contact your vendor.

Condition 2. Error Conditions while Receiving the CDB

Did an error occur while the library was receiving the CDB?

NO

Go to condition 3 (page 3-6).

YES

The library's handling of errors received during the command phase is independent of the requested command. The following errors can occur:

- **Unsupported Operation (OP) code received.** If the OP code is not supported, the library receives the remaining CDB bytes, then returns Check Condition status with the sense data set as follows:

Sense Key	Illegal Request (5h)
ASC	Invalid OP Code (20h)
ASCQ	00h

- **Parity error detected in CDB byte.** If a parity error is detected in a CDB byte, the library's response depends on whether the message system is enabled.

Condition 3. Invalid Logical Unit Number

Was the logical unit number (LUN) in the Identify message non-zero, or if no Identify message was sent, was the LUN in the CDB non-zero?

NO

Go to condition 4 (page 3-9).

YES

See Table 3-1 for information about how the library responds to an invalid LUN for each command.

Table 3-1 Command handling when an invalid LUN has been sent to the library

When the LUN is invalid and you issue this command...	The library does this...		
	Terminates the command and sets sense data. ^a	Continues processing the command.	Continues processing the command.
	Returns Check Condition status.	Sets inquiry data. ^b	Sets sense data. ^a
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS	✓		
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	✓		
INQUIRY		✓	
LOG SENSE	✓		
MODE SELECT	✓		
MODE SENSE	✓		
MOVE MEDIUM	✓		
POSITION TO ELEMENT	✓		
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	✓		
READ ELEMENT STATUS	✓		
READ FIRMWARE	✓		
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	✓		
RELEASE	✓		
REQUEST SENSE			✓
REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS	✓		
RESERVE	✓		
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	✓		
SEND VOLUME TAG	✓		
TEST UNIT READY	✓		
WRITE FIRMWARE	✓		

^a The library sets the sense data as follows:

Sense key = Illegal Request (5h)

ASC = Logical unit not supported (25h)

ASCQ = 0

^b The library sets byte 00 in the Inquiry data to Invalid Peripheral Byte (7Fh), where the Peripheral Qualifier field (bits 7 to 5) is 011b (binary) and the Peripheral Device Type field (bits 4 to 0) is 1Fh.

About Logical Unit Numbers

The library supports a logical unit number (LUN) of 0 only. You can specify the LUN in either of two ways:

- By sending an Identify message with the LUN field set to 0
- By sending a CDB with the LUN field set to 0 and not sending an Identify message

If the library is selected with the Attention signal and receives an Identify message during the first Message Out phase, it determines the LUN from the Identify message and ignores the LUN in the CDB. If the library does not receive an Identify message after selection, it uses the LUN in the CDB.

Preservation of Sense Data for LUN 0

To ensure that the initiator receives the correct sense data for the specified LUN, the sense data for LUN 0 is not affected by commands issued to an invalid LUN.

Example — Invalid LUN Sent to the Library

1. Initiator 3 selects the library with a LUN of 0 and requests that a cartridge be moved from location 0 to location 3. Location 0 is empty, so the move operation terminates with Check Condition status.
2. Initiator 3 selects the library with a LUN of 2 and issues the REQUEST SENSE command. The following sense data is returned and the command completes with Good status.

Sense Key	Illegal Request (5h)
ASC	Logical Unit Not Supported (25h)
ASCQ	0

3. Initiator 3 selects the library with a LUN of 0 and issues another REQUEST SENSE command. The following sense data is returned and the command completes with Good status.

Sense Key	Illegal Request (5h)
ASC	Move Error (3Bh)
ASCQ	Source for Move Empty (3Dh)

Condition 4. Invalid Initiator Reselection

Has an invalid initiator reselection occurred?

NO

Go to condition 5 (page 3-10).

YES

An invalid initiator reselection condition occurs when the library has disconnected from an initiator to perform a lengthy operation and the same initiator selects the library and issues a command to LUN 0. The library takes the following actions:

1. It aborts the command that it was processing.
2. It returns Check Condition status and sets the sense data as follows:

Sense Key	Aborted Command (Bh)
ASC	Overlapped Commands Attempted (4Eh)
ASCQ	0

Condition 5. **Reservation Conflict**

Is the entire library reserved by a different initiator?

Note: Refer to Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE command.

NO

Go to condition 6 (page 3-12).

YES

A different initiator has reserved the entire library. See Table 3-2 for command handling.

Table 3-2 Command handling when the library is reserved by a different initiator

When the library is reserved by a different initiator and you issue this command...	The library does this...	
	Terminates the command and returns Reservation Conflict status.	Continues processing the command.
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	✓	
INQUIRY		✓
LOG SENSE	✓	
MODE SELECT	✓	
MODE SENSE	✓	
MOVE MEDIUM	✓	
POSITION TO ELEMENT	✓	
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (PREVENT command)	✓	
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (ALLOW command)		✓
READ ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
READ FIRMWARE	✓	
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	✓	
RELEASE		✓
REQUEST SENSE		✓
REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS	✓	
RESERVE	✓	
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	✓	
SEND VOLUME TAG	✓	
TEST UNIT READY	✓	
WRITE FIRMWARE	✓	

Condition 6. Busy

Is the library busy?

Note: The library returns Busy status to an initiator when it is disconnected from the SCSI bus to process a SCSI command for a different initiator or when it is aborting a SCSI motion command.

NO

Go to condition 7 (page 3-14).

YES

See Table 3-3 for command handling.

Note: While the library is in the process of aborting a motion command, it returns Busy status to all initiators requesting any command other than INQUIRY (12h) and REQUEST SENSE (03h). This allows the library to complete the abort process as quickly as possible. The library aborts a motion command under the following conditions:

- When it receives an Abort message from the same initiator that requested the command (see Section 1.5 for information about the Abort message)
- After an invalid initiator reselection (see page 3-9)

Table 3-3 Command handling when the library is busy

When the library is busy and you issue this command...	The library does this...	
	Terminates the command and returns Busy status.	Continues processing the command.
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	✓	
INQUIRY		✓
LOG SENSE	✓	
MODE SELECT	✓	
MODE SENSE	✓	
MOVE MEDIUM	✓	
POSITION TO ELEMENT	✓	
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	✓	
READ ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
READ FIRMWARE	✓	
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	✓	
RELEASE	✓	
REQUEST SENSE		✓
REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS	✓	
RESERVE	✓	
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	✓	
SEND VOLUME TAG	✓	
TEST UNIT READY	✓	
WRITE FIRMWARE	✓	

Condition 7. Pending Unit Attention

Is there a pending Unit Attention condition for the library?

NO

Go to condition 8 (page 3-19).

YES

See Table 3-4 for command handling.

Table 3-4 Command handling when a Unit Attention condition is pending

When the library has a Unit Attention condition pending and you issue this command...	The library does this...	
	Sets sense data for the pending Unit Attention and then clears the Unit Attention. Terminates the command and returns Check Condition status.	Continues processing the command. Reports any pending status. Preserves the pending Unit Attention sense data.
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	✓	
INQUIRY		✓
LOG SENSE	✓	
MODE SELECT	✓	
MODE SENSE	✓	
MOVE MEDIUM	✓	
POSITION TO ELEMENT	✓	
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	✓	
READ ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
READ FIRMWARE	✓	
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	✓	
RELEASE	✓	
REQUEST SENSE		✓
REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS	✓	
RESERVE	✓	
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	✓	
SEND VOLUME TAG	✓	
TEST UNIT READY	✓	
WRITE FIRMWARE	✓	

About Unit Attention Condition

The library establishes a Unit Attention condition when a user may have accessed any of the cartridges or the tape drives or when any of the internal parameters of the library have been changed. Specifically, the library establishes a Unit Attention condition after any of the following happen:

- The library is reset (whether by a power-on reset, a Bus Device Reset message, a SCSI bus reset, a remote hardware reset, or an operator panel reset).
- The library's firmware is upgraded.
- The library's door is closed.
- The MODE SELECT parameters are changed by an initiator other than the one attempting to communicate with the library.
- The library is put in SCSI Interface mode after operating in another control mode (refer to *EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation* for instructions for switching between control modes).

For example, the library reports Not Ready when the door is open and Unit Attention as soon as it closes.

First Command Received after Unit Attention is Reported

If REQUEST SENSE is the first command received after the Unit Attention condition is reported with Check Condition status, the library sends the sense data for the Unit Attention condition to the initiator.

If the library receives any other command after reporting the Unit Attention condition, the library clears the sense data for the Unit Attention and executes the command normally.

Reporting of Multiple Unit Attention Conditions

The library does not stack Unit Attention conditions. Whenever there are two or more Unit Attention conditions, the library reports only the last one encountered. For example, if the library is powered on, returned to SCSI Interface mode, and the initiator issues its first SCSI command, the library only reports that it has just been returned to SCSI Interface mode.

Condition 8. Executing ROM Boot Code

Is the library executing the ROM boot code?

NO

The library is executing the flash EEPROM code. Go to condition 9 (page 3-19).

YES

See Table 3-5 for command handling.

Table 3-5 Command handling when the library is executing ROM boot code

When the library has a Unit Attention condition pending and you issue this command...	The library does this...	
	Sets sense data for the pending Unit Attention and then clears the Unit Attention. Terminates the command and returns Check Condition status.	Continues processing the command. Reports any pending status. Preserves the pending Unit Attention sense data.
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	✓	
INQUIRY		✓
LOG SENSE	✓	
MODE SELECT	✓	
MODE SENSE	✓	
MOVE MEDIUM	✓	
POSITION TO ELEMENT	✓	
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	✓	
READ ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
READ FIRMWARE		✓
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	✓	
RELEASE	✓	
REQUEST SENSE		✓
REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS	✓	
RESERVE	✓	
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	✓	
SEND VOLUME TAG	✓	
TEST UNIT READY	✓	
WRITE FIRMWARE		✓

Condition 9. Unrecoverable Hardware Error

Has an unrecoverable hardware error occurred?

NO

Go to condition 10 (page 3-22).

YES

The library is able to process SCSI commands after an unrecoverable hardware error has occurred unless the failure occurs within the SCSI interface. When the library receives SCSI commands after an unrecoverable hardware error, it processes the commands as described in Table 3-6.

Table 3-6 Command handling when an unrecoverable hardware error has occurred

When an unrecoverable hardware error has occurred and you issue this command...	The library does this...	
	Sets sense data for the existing hardware error. Terminates the command and returns Check Condition status.	Continues processing the command.
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	✓	
INQUIRY		✓
LOG SENSE		✓
MODE SELECT		✓
MODE SENSE		✓
MOVE MEDIUM	✓	
POSITION TO ELEMENT	✓	
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL		✓
READ ELEMENT STATUS		✓
READ FIRMWARE		✓
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS		✓
RELEASE		✓
REQUEST SENSE		✓
REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS		✓
RESERVE		✓
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	✓	
SEND VOLUME TAG		✓
TEST UNIT READY	✓	
WRITE FIRMWARE		✓

About Hardware Error Conditions

A Hardware Error condition occurs when the library detects a failure that prevents it from finishing a requested operation. If the error requires intervention from an operator, the failure is determined to be an *unrecoverable hardware error* and the following occurs:

- The library displays the error code for the failure on the LCD display.
- The library does not perform motion commands.

For a complete list of hardware error conditions and the sense data set for each, refer to Appendix D.

Clearing an Unrecoverable Hardware Error

To clear an unrecoverable hardware error, do the following:

1. Determine the cause of the error and fix it. This may involve actions such as removing a cartridge from the CHM.

Note: Fixing some hardware errors may require that you turn off the power first.

2. Reset the library. Refer to Section 2.3 on page 2-4 for a description of reset alternatives and the effects of each.

Condition 10. Not Ready

Has a Not Ready condition occurred?

NO

Go to condition 11 (page 3-27).

YES

The library is unable to accept or perform any motion commands. See Table 3-7 for command handling.

Table 3-7 Command handling when the library is Not Ready

When the library is Not Ready and you issue this command...	The library does this...	
	Sets sense data for the Not Ready condition. Terminates the command and returns Check Condition status.	Continues processing the command.
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	✓	
INQUIRY		✓
LOG SENSE		✓
MODE SELECT		✓
MODE SENSE		✓
MOVE MEDIUM	✓	
POSITION TO ELEMENT	✓	
PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL		✓
READ ELEMENT STATUS	✓	
READ FIRMWARE		✓
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS		✓
RELEASE		✓
REQUEST SENSE		✓
REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS	✓	
RESERVE		✓
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	✓	
SEND VOLUME TAG	✓	
TEST UNIT READY	✓	
WRITE FIRMWARE		✓

About the Not Ready Condition

The library establishes the Not Ready condition when it is unable to accept any motion commands. The library performs all other commands as specified. The library is not ready when:

- **Its initialization routine is in progress.** Initialization occurs after any of the following:
 - The library is powered on or reset.
 - The front door is closed.
- **It is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.** (Refer to the operating instructions provided with the library for instructions for switching between control modes.)
- **Its door is opened.** When the library's door is opened, electric current to all motors is shut off.

The library takes different corrective actions for different types of Not Ready conditions. The following sections describe how the library handles the different Not Ready conditions.

Initialization Process

If a Not Ready condition is caused by a reset condition, the following occurs:

1. The library establishes a Unit Attention condition as a result of the reset and begins its initialization process.
2. During the initialization sequence, the library returns Check Condition status in response to each motion command. If the library receives a REQUEST SENSE command during initialization, it reports the following:

Sense key	Not Ready (2h)
ASC	Not Ready (04h)
ASCQ	Initialization in Progress (01h)

Operating in LCD Interface Mode, a Serial Port mode, or a Sequential Mode

If a Not Ready condition occurs because the library is operating in one of these modes, the following occurs:

1. While the library is operating in one of these modes, it returns Check Condition status in response to each motion command. If the library receives a REQUEST SENSE command, it reports the following:

When in a serial port mode:

Sense key	Not Ready (2h)
ASC	Not Ready (04h)
ASCQ	Serial port mode (89h)

When in LCD Interface mode:

Sense key	Not Ready (2h)
ASC	Not Ready (04h)
ASCQ	LCD Interface mode (8Dh)

When in one of the sequential modes:

Sense key	Not Ready (2h)
ASC	Not Ready (04h)
ASCQ	Sequential Interface mode (8Eh)

2. When the library is operating in SCSI Interface mode again, it establishes a Unit Attention condition. If the library receives a REQUEST SENSE command, it reports the following:

After a serial port mode:

Sense key	Unit Attention (6h)
ASC	Not ready to ready transition (28h)
ASCQ	Serial port mode (89h)

After LCD Interface mode:

Sense key	Unit Attention (6h)
ASC	Not ready to ready transition (28h)
ASCQ	LCD Interface mode (8Dh)

After one of the sequential modes:

Sense key	Unit Attention (6h)
ASC	Not ready to ready transition (28h)
ASCQ	Sequential Interface mode (8Eh)

Door Open

If a Not Ready condition occurs because the library's door is open, the following occurs:

1. While the front door is open, the library returns Check Condition status in response to each motion command. If the library receives a REQUEST SENSE command, it reports the following:

Sense key	Not Ready (2h)
ASC	Not Ready (04h)
ASCQ	Front door is open (83h)

2. After the door is closed, the library begins its initialization process.
3. During its initialization process, the library returns Check Condition status to each motion command. If the library receives a REQUEST SENSE command during initialization, it reports the following:

Sense key	Not Ready (2h)
ASC	Not Ready (04h)
ASCQ	Initialization in Progress (01h)

4. After its initialization process is complete, the library establishes a Unit Attention condition and reports the following in response to a REQUEST SENSE command:

Sense key	Unit Attention (6h)
ASC	Not Ready to Ready transition (28h)
ASCQ	Front door was opened then closed (00h)

Condition 11. CDB Reserved Bit Set

Is a reserved bit set (to a value other than 0) in the CDB?

Note: The library checks to make sure all of the reserved bits are set to 0 in the CDB. The reserved bits, if present, are checked from the most significant bit in the least significant byte of the CDB to the least significant bit in the most significant byte of the CDB.

NO

The general command processing for this command completed successfully. For information about the conditions and errors specific to a SCSI command, refer to the section called “Command Execution” in the chapter for that command.

YES

This error is handled in the same manner for every command. The library returns Check Condition status after the first invalid reserved bit is detected and does not continue processing the remainder of the CDB. The sense data is set as follows:

Sense Key	Illegal Request (5h)
ASC	Invalid Field in CDB (24h)
ASCQ	00h
SKSV	1
C/D	1
BPV	1
Bit Pointer	Bit number of invalid reserved bit
Field Pointer	CDB byte number of invalid reserved bit

Notes

4 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02	Reserved							
03								
04								
05	NBL	0	Reserved				0	0

4.1 About This Command

The INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS command causes the library to check all elements for cartridges. The library checks the elements in ascending element address order (see Chapter 8 for more information about element addresses). If a bar code scanner is installed and bar code labels are attached to each cartridge, the library also scans the bar code labels unless the NBL field in the CDB is set to 1 (see page 4-3). The information obtained by this command can be returned to the initiator using the READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h) command.

Notes:

- For specifications for the bar code labels that can be used with the library, refer to the *Exabyte Bar Code Label Specification for 8mm Cartridges*.
- For best bar code scan results, refer to *EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation* for information about positioning the bar code labels on the data cartridges.

- The library cannot scan a label on a cartridge in a tape drive unless the cartridge is ejected.
- If an initialize element status operation is performed on the CHM, no action is taken because the status of the CHM is always current and valid.

When to Use This Command

The library supports two INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS commands. Use one of these two commands after a reset or any manual operation or configuration change that may affect the status of the cartridge inventory.

Use these guidelines to decide which of the two commands to use:

- Use the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) command when you want the entire cartridge inventory to be updated. When you use this command, the library checks every element for the presence of a data cartridge.
- Use the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) command to update the cartridge inventory for a range of cartridges when a manual operation or configuration change has affected those cartridges. When you use this command, the library checks only the elements in the specified element address range. For more information, see Chapter 5.

Time to Complete This Command

The amount of time required for the library to perform an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS command depends on whether the following conditions are met:

- A bar code scanner is installed.
- Bar code labels are attached to the cartridges.
- The No Bar Code Label (NBL) bit in the command is set. (When this bit is 1, the library does not scan bar code labels.)

For specific information about the time required to complete this command, refer to the *EXB-210 Product Specification* or *EXB-220 Product Specification*.

4.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

NBL (No Bar Code Labels) – Byte 05, Bit 7

This field indicates whether the library should scan the bar code labels on each cartridge, as follows:

0 – Scan the bar code labels

1 – Do not scan the bar code labels

- When this field is set to 0 (scan labels), the library scans the labels and saves this information for the application to use during a Read Element Status operation. The library does not repeat the physical inventory by touching each cartridge.
- When this field is set to 1, the library checks for the presence of a cartridge at each location by touching each cartridge but does not scan the bar code labels.

► **Important** If the library does not have a bar code scanner, set the NBL bit to 1. If no bar code scanner is installed and you set the NBL bit to 0, the library returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request.

Similarly, if the library has a bar code scanner but the cartridges do not have labels, set the NBL bit to 1. The bar code scanner cannot calibrate itself on the unlabeled cartridges.

4.3 Effects on the Cartridge Inventory

The library updates the cartridge inventory after it checks for the presence of a cartridge at each location and (if requested) scans the bar code labels. This section describes how the library updates the cartridge inventory.

The following tables (Table 4-1 through Table 4-5) illustrate the various outcomes of a requested scan operation and the effect on the cartridge inventory.

- A request is made to check for the presence of a cartridge or to scan a cartridge in a tape drive or data cartridge magazine that is not installed. The library does not attempt to check the presence of the cartridge or scan the cartridge in either of these cases, and the cartridge inventory is not changed.
- A request is made to scan a cartridge in a storage location and the scan operation completed successfully (the library bar code scanner was able to read the label on the cartridge or the location was empty). See Table 4-1 for details about how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Table 4-1 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a cartridge scan in a storage location

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when...	
	...the location is empty	...the location is full
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	cartridge label
Label Valid	0	1
Label Error	0	0
Label Scan Retries	0	updated if retried
Source Address	no change	no change

- A request is made to check for the presence of a cartridge in a storage location and the operation completed successfully. See Table 4-2 for more information about how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Table 4-2 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a request to check the occupied status of a storage location

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when...	
	...the location is empty	...the location is full
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	no change
Label Valid	0	no change
Label Error	0	no change
Label Scan Retries	0	no change
Source Address	no change	no change

- A request is made to scan a cartridge in a storage location or in a tape drive with the cartridge ejected, and the operation failed because the bar code scanner was unable to read the label on the cartridge. The bar code scan will fail if the library was unable to read the label or if the cartridge does not have a label. The scan will not fail if the location is empty. See Table 4-3 for details about how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Table 4-3 Effect on the cartridge inventory when the library is unable to read a cartridge label in a storage location or in a tape drive (cartridge ejected)

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when the library cannot read the cartridge label
Occupied	1
Occupied Valid	1
Label	blanks
Label Valid	0
Label Error	0 – No error 60 – No label on cartridge 61 – Label present but unreadable 62 – No cartridge magazine or tape drive not installed 65 – A Direct Memory Access overrun occurred 67 – A Direct Memory Access channel timeout occurred 69 – The label is upside down
Label Scan Retries	updated if retried
Source Address	no change

A request to scan the label of a cartridge in a tape drive completed successfully. See Table 4-4 for more information about how the cartridge inventory is updated if the tape drive is empty or the cartridge has been ejected. See Table 4-5 for more information about how the cartridge inventory is updated when the cartridge is inside the tape drive.

Table 4-4 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when ...	
	...the tape drive is empty	...the cartridge is ejected
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	cartridge label
Label Valid	0	1
Label Error	0	0
Label Scan Retries	0	updated if retried
Tape Drive Accessible	1	1
Source Address	no change	no change

Table 4-5 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive with a data cartridge loaded

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when a cartridge is loaded into the tape drive
Occupied	no change
Occupied Valid	no change
Label	no change
Label Valid	no change
Label Error	no change
Label Scan Retries	no change
Tape Drive Accessible	0
Source Address	no change

4.4 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from executing. Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete list of conditions that the library checks while it is receiving and after it has received the CDB from the initiator.

Figure 4-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

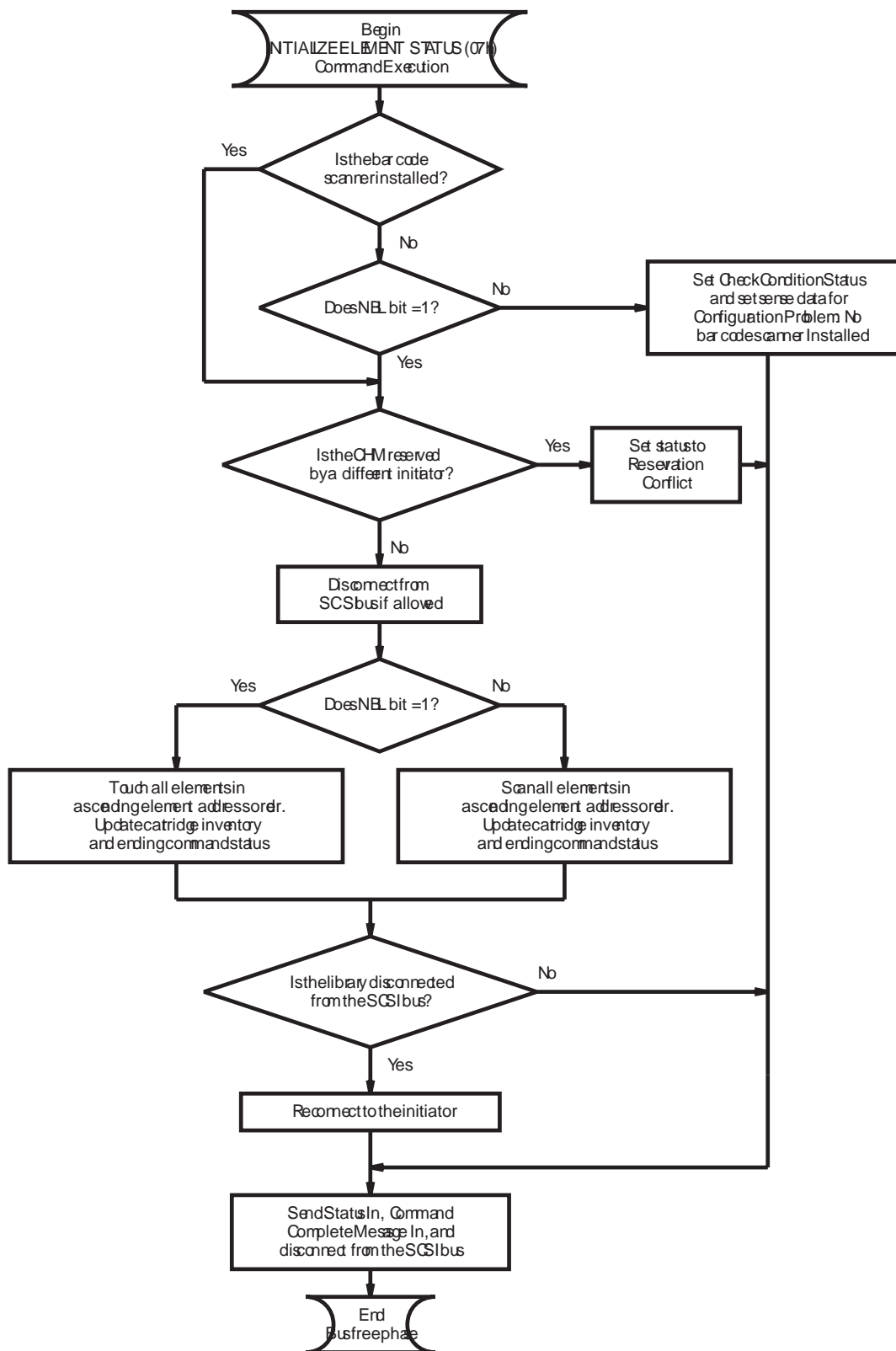


Figure 4-1 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS command execution

4.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS command as follows:

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it or the CHM is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

Check Condition status is returned for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects a parity error while receiving the CDB and the message system is not enabled.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- The library has experienced an unrecoverable hardware error.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB or a parameter in the CDB is invalid.
- The library encounters a problem while scanning the cartridges.

- The library is not ready because the door is open, or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.
- The NBL bit in the CDB is set to 0 and no bar code scanner is installed (see Table 4-6 for sense data).

Table 4-6 Invalid parameters in the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	85h	01h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Configuration problem: No bar code scanner is installed.

Notes

5 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				Range
02	(MSB) Element Address (LSB)							
03								
04	Reserved							
05								
06	(MSB) Number of Elements (LSB)							
07								
08	Reserved							
09	NBL	0	Reserved				0	0

5.1 About This Command

The INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE command is an Exabyte-unique command that causes the library to check the requested range of storage elements for cartridges. The library checks the elements in ascending element address order (see Chapter 8 for more information about element addresses). If a bar code scanner is installed and bar code labels are attached to each cartridge, the library also scans the bar code labels unless the NBL field in the CDB is set to 1 (see page 5-3). The information obtained by this command can be returned to the initiator using the READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h) command.

Notes:

- For specifications for the bar code labels that can be used with the library, refer to the *Exabyte Bar Code Specification for 8mm Cartridges*.
- For best bar code scan results, refer to *EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation* for information about positioning the bar code labels on the data cartridges.
- The library cannot scan a label on a cartridge that is loaded in a tape drive unless the cartridge is ejected.
- If an initialize element status operation is performed on the CHM, no action is taken because the status of the CHM is always current and valid.

When to Use This Command

The library supports two INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS commands. Use one of these two commands after a reset or any manual operation or configuration change that may affect the status of the cartridge inventory.

Use these guidelines to decide which of the two commands to use:

- Use the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) command to update the cartridge inventory for a range of cartridges when a manual operation or configuration change has affected those cartridges. When you use this command, the library checks only the elements in the specified element address range.
- Use the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) command when you want the entire cartridge inventory to be updated. When you use this command, the library checks every element for the presence of a data cartridge. For more information, see Chapter 4.

5.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Range – Byte 01, Bit 0

The Range field indicates which elements are to be checked, as follows:

0 – Initialize all elements

1 – Initialize the range of elements specified by the Element Address and Number of Elements fields

Element Address – Bytes 02 and 03

This field specifies the address of the element or the starting address of a series of elements to be checked. This field is ignored when the Range field is 0. Figure 1-5 on page 1-8 and Figure 1-6 on page 1-9 show the default element addresses for the library.

Number of Elements – Bytes 06 and 07

This field indicates the maximum number of elements to be checked. This field is ignored when the Range field is 0.

If an initialize element status operation is performed on the CHM, the request does not count toward the total number of elements requested in the Number of Elements field.

NBL (No Bar Code Labels) – Byte 09, Bit 7

This field indicates whether the library should scan the bar code labels on each cartridge, as follows:

0 – Scan the bar code labels

1 – Do not scan the bar code labels

- When this field is set to 0 (scan labels), the library scans the bar code labels and saves this information for the application to use during a Read Element Status operation. The library does not repeat the physical inventory by touching each data cartridge.

- When this field is set to 1, the library checks for the presence of a cartridge at each location by touching each data cartridge, but does not scan the bar code labels.

► **Important** If the library does not have a bar code scanner, set the NBL bit to 1. If no bar code scanner is installed and you set the NBL bit to 0, the library returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request.

Similarly, if the library has a bar code scanner but the cartridges do not have labels, set the NBL bit to 1. The bar code scanner cannot calibrate itself on the unlabeled cartridges.

5.3 Effects on the Cartridge Inventory

The library updates the cartridge inventory after it checks for the presence of a cartridge at each location and (if requested) scans the bar code labels. This section describes how the library updates the cartridge inventory.

The Table 5-1 through Table 5-5 illustrate the various outcomes of a requested scan operation and show the effect on the cartridge inventory.

- A request is made to check for the presence of a cartridge or to scan a cartridge in a tape drive or data cartridge magazine that is not installed. The library does not attempt to check for the presence of the cartridge or scan the cartridge in either of these cases, and the cartridge inventory is not changed.

- A request is made to scan a cartridge in a storage location and the operation completed successfully. (The bar code scanner was able to read the label on the cartridge or the location was empty.) See Table 5-1 for details about how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Table 5-1 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a cartridge scan in a storage location

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when...	
	...the location is empty	...the location is full
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	cartridge label
Label Valid	0	1
Label Error	0	0
Label Scan Retries	0	updated if retried
Source Address	no change	no change

- A successful request is made to check for the presence of a cartridge in a storage location. Table 5-2 shows the effect on the cartridge inventory.

Table 5-2 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a request to check the occupied status of a storage location

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when...	
	...the location is empty	...the location is full
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	no change
Label Valid	0	no change
Label Error	0	no change
Label Scan Retries	0	no change
Source Address	no change	no change

5 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h)

- An unsuccessful request is made to scan a cartridge in a storage location or in a tape drive (with the cartridge ejected). The scan is successful if the location is empty. The scan fails if there is no label or the library cannot read the label. Table 5-3 shows the effect on the cartridge inventory.

Table 5-3 Effect on the cartridge inventory of an unsuccessful cartridge scan in a storage location or in a tape drive (cartridge ejected)

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following
Occupied	1
Occupied Valid	1
Label	blanks
Label Valid	0
Label Error	0 – No error 60 – No label on cartridge 61 – Label present but unreadable 62 – No cartridge magazine or tape drive not installed 65 – A Direct Memory Access overrun occurred 67 – A Direct Memory Access channel timeout occurred 69 – The label is upside down
Label Scan Retries	updated if retried
Source Address	no change

- A request is made to scan a cartridge in a tape drive and the operation completed successfully. Table 5-4 shows how the cartridge inventory is updated when the drive is empty or the cartridge is ejected. Table 5-5 shows the cartridge inventory field when the cartridge is inside the drive.

Table 5-4 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when...	
	...the tape drive is empty	...the cartridge is ejected
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	cartridge label
Label Valid	0	0
Label Error	0	0
Label Scan Retries	0	updated if retried
Tape Drive Accessible	1	1
Source Address	no change	no change

Table 5-5 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful cartridge scan in a tape drive with a cartridge inside the drive

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when a cartridge is loaded in the tape drive
Occupied	no change
Occupied Valid	no change
Label	no change
Label Valid	no change
Label Error	no change
Label Scan Retries	no change
Tape Drive Accessible	0
Source Address	no change

5.4 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed. Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete list of conditions that the library checks while it is receiving and after it has received the CDB from the initiator.

Figure 5-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 5-6 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

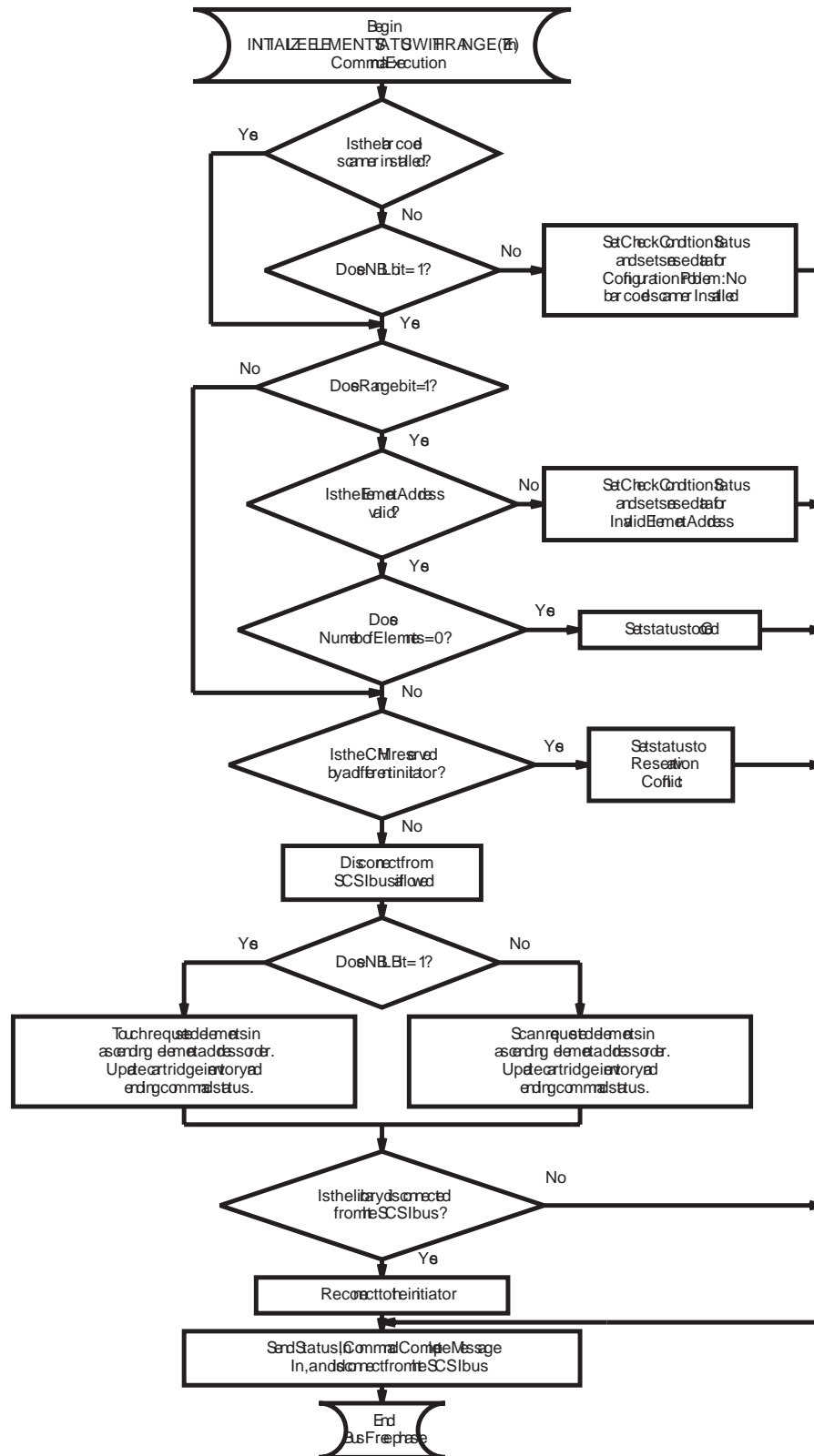


Figure 5-1 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE command execution

5.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when the library is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it or the CHM is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- The library has experienced an unrecoverable hardware error.
- The library encounters a problem scanning the cartridges.
- The library is not ready because the door is open, or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.

- The NBL bit is set to 0 and no bar code scanner is installed (see Table 5-6 for sense data).
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB or a parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 5-6 for sense data).

Table 5-6 Invalid parameters in the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	0	0002h	Invalid element address.
5h	85h	01h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Configuration problem: No bar code scanner is installed.

Notes

6 INQUIRY (12h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				EVPD
02	Page Code							
03	Reserved							
04	Allocation Length							
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

6.1 About This Command

The INQUIRY command requests that the library send information regarding its parameters to the initiator.

Typical inquiry data for the EXB-220 looks like this:

08h	80h	02h	02h	33h	00h	00h	00h		(bytes 00 through 07)
E	X	A	B	Y	T	E	_		(bytes 08 through 15)
E	X	B	-	2	2	0	_	_	(bytes 16 through 31)
									(bytes 32 through 35)
3	.	1	_						(bytes 36 through 54)
3	.	1	.	3	7	_	_	_	

Each “_” indicates an ASCII space character. The inquiry data that the library returns is described in Section 6.3.

6.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

EVPD (Enable Vital Product Data) – Byte 01, Bit 0

This field indicates the type of inquiry data you are requesting, as follows:

0 – Standard inquiry data (described on page 6-3)

1 – Vital product data (described on page 6-6), based on the Page Code field (byte 02)

Page Code – Byte 02

This field contains the page number of the vital product data page to be returned for this INQUIRY command. The library supports the following page codes:

00h – Supported Vital Product Data page

80h – Unit Serial Number page

If the EVPD bit is set to 0, the Page Code must be 00h.

Allocation Length – Byte 04

This field specifies the number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for returned inquiry data. A value of 0 indicates that no inquiry data is to be transferred. This condition is not an error.

The library terminates the Data In phase when it has transferred either the number of bytes specified by the Allocation Length field or all of the available inquiry data, whichever is less. The Allocation Lengths for inquiry data returned by the library are:

- 38h (56) bytes to return the standard inquiry data
- 06h (6) bytes to return the Supported Vital Product Data page
- 0Eh (14) bytes for the Unit Serial Number page

6.3 What the Library Returns

When the EVPD bit (byte 01, bit 0) is 0, the library returns 56 bytes of standard inquiry data, as described below.

Standard Inquiry Data

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Peripheral Qualifier			Peripheral Device Type				
01	RMB	Device Type Qualifier						
02	ISO Version		ECMA Version			ANSI (Approved Version)		
03	AENC	TrmlOP	Reserved		Response Data Format			
04	Additional Length							
05	Reserved							
06								
07	RelAdr	WBus32	WBus16	Sync	Linked	RSVD	CmdQue	SftRe
08 : 15	(MSB) Vendor Identification (LSB)							
16 : 31	(MSB) Product Identification (LSB)							
32 : 35	(MSB) Firmware Revision Level (LSB)							
36 : 54	(MSB) Full Firmware Revision Level (LSB)							
55	Vendor Specific							BarC

Peripheral Qualifier – Byte 00, Bits 7 through 5

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library is a single LUN device. If you specify a LUN other than 0 when you issue this command, the value returned for this field is 011b (binary), which indicates that the library is not capable of supporting a physical device on the specified logical unit.

Peripheral Device Type – Byte 00, Bits 4 through 0

The value returned for this field is 08h, identifying the library as a medium changer device. If you specify a LUN other than 0 when you issue this command, the value returned for this field is 1Fh, indicating that the peripheral device type is unknown. The remainder of the standard inquiry data is returned normally for the library.

RMB (Removable Medium Bit) – Byte 01, Bit 7

The value returned for this field is 1, indicating that the media is removable.

Device Type Qualifier – Byte 01, Bits 6 through 0

The value returned for this field is 00h, indicating that there are no qualifiers.

Standards Versions – Byte 02

The value returned for this byte is 02h, indicating support of the current ANSI version of the SCSI-2 specification.

AENC (Asynchronous Event Notification Capability) – Byte 03, Bit 7

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support this function.

TrmIOP (Terminate I/O Process) – Byte 03, Bit 6

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support this function.

Response Data Format – Byte 03, Bits 3 through 0

The value returned for this field is 2h, indicating that the data is in accordance with SCSI-2.

Additional Length – Byte 04

The value returned for this field is 33h, indicating that there are 33h (51) additional bytes of inquiry data available to be returned to the initiator.

RelAdr (Relative Addressing) – Byte 07, Bit 7

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support this function.

WBus32 (Wide Bus 32) – Byte 07, Bit 6

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support 32-bit-wide bus transfers.

WBus16 (Wide Bus 16) – Byte 07, Bit 5

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support 16-bit-wide bus transfers.

Sync (Synchronous Transfer) – Byte 07, Bit 4

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support synchronous data transfer.

Linked (Linked Command) – Byte 07, Bit 3

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support linked commands.

CmdQue (Command Queuing) – Byte 07, Bit 1

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support tag command queuing.

SftRe (Soft Reset) – Byte 07, Bit 0

The value returned for this field is 0, indicating that the library does not support the soft reset alternative in response to a reset condition.

Vendor Identification – Bytes 08 through 15

The value contained in these bytes is the ASCII representation of “EXABYTE” followed by a single space.

Product Identification – Bytes 16 through 31

The value contained in these bytes is the ASCII representation of the product name, “EXB-210” or “EXB-220,” followed by nine spaces.

Firmware Revision Level – Bytes 32 through 35

The value contained in these bytes is the ASCII representation of the firmware revision level (for example, “3.1 ” or other Exabyte firmware revisions) followed by sufficient spaces to fill the four-byte field.

Full Firmware Revision Level – Bytes 36 through 54

The value contained in these bytes is the ASCII representation of the full firmware revision level (for example, 3.1.37) followed by sufficient spaces to fill the 19-byte field.

BarC (Bar Code) – Byte 55, Bit 0

The value returned for this field indicates whether the library has a bar code scanner installed, as follows:

- 0 – No bar code scanner is installed.
- 1 – A bar code scanner is installed.

Supported Vital Product Data Page

When the EVPD bit is 1 and the Page Code is 00h, the library returns the Supported Vital Product Data page as described below.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Peripheral Qualifier			Peripheral Device Type				
01	Page Code							
02	Reserved							
03	Page Length							
04	Supported Vital Product Data page (00h)							
05	Unit Serial Number page (80h)							

Peripheral Qualifier – Byte 00, Bits 7 through 5

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library is a single LUN device.

Peripheral Device Type – Byte 00, Bits 4 through 0

The value returned for this field is 08h, which identifies the library as a medium changer device. If the LUN in the CDB is not 0, the value returned for this field is 7Fh, which indicates that the LUN is invalid.

Page Code – Byte 01

The value returned for this field is 00h, which is the Page Code for the Supported Vital Product page.

Page Length – Byte 03

The value returned for this field is 02h, which indicates the number of remaining bytes in this page (excluding this byte).

Unit Serial Number Page

When the EVPD bit is 1 and the Page Code is 80h, the library returns the Unit Serial Number page as described below.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Device Type Code							
01	Page Code							
02	Reserved							
03	Page Length							
04 : 13	(MSB) Unit Serial Number (LSB)							

Device Type Code – Byte 00

The value returned for this field is 08h, which identifies the library as a medium changer device. If the LUN in the CDB is not 0, the value returned for this field is 7Fh, which indicates that the LUN is invalid.

Page Code – Byte 01

The value returned for this field is 80h, which is the Page Code for the Unit Serial Number page.

Page Length – Byte 03

The value returned for this field is 0Ah, which indicates the number of remaining bytes in this page (excluding this byte).

Unit Serial Number – Bytes 04 through 13

The value returned for this field is the serial number for the library, as set from the operator panel. The MSB is contained in byte 04. Serial numbers of less than 10 characters contain trailing blanks (20h).

The library serial number is normally entered at the factory. If the serial number has never been set, the value returned for this field is 99999999 _ _ , where each “_” represents a blank. (See *EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation* for information about setting or verifying the library’s serial number from the operator panel.)

6.4 How the Library Executes This Command

This section describes how the library executes the INQUIRY command. The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 6-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 6-1 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

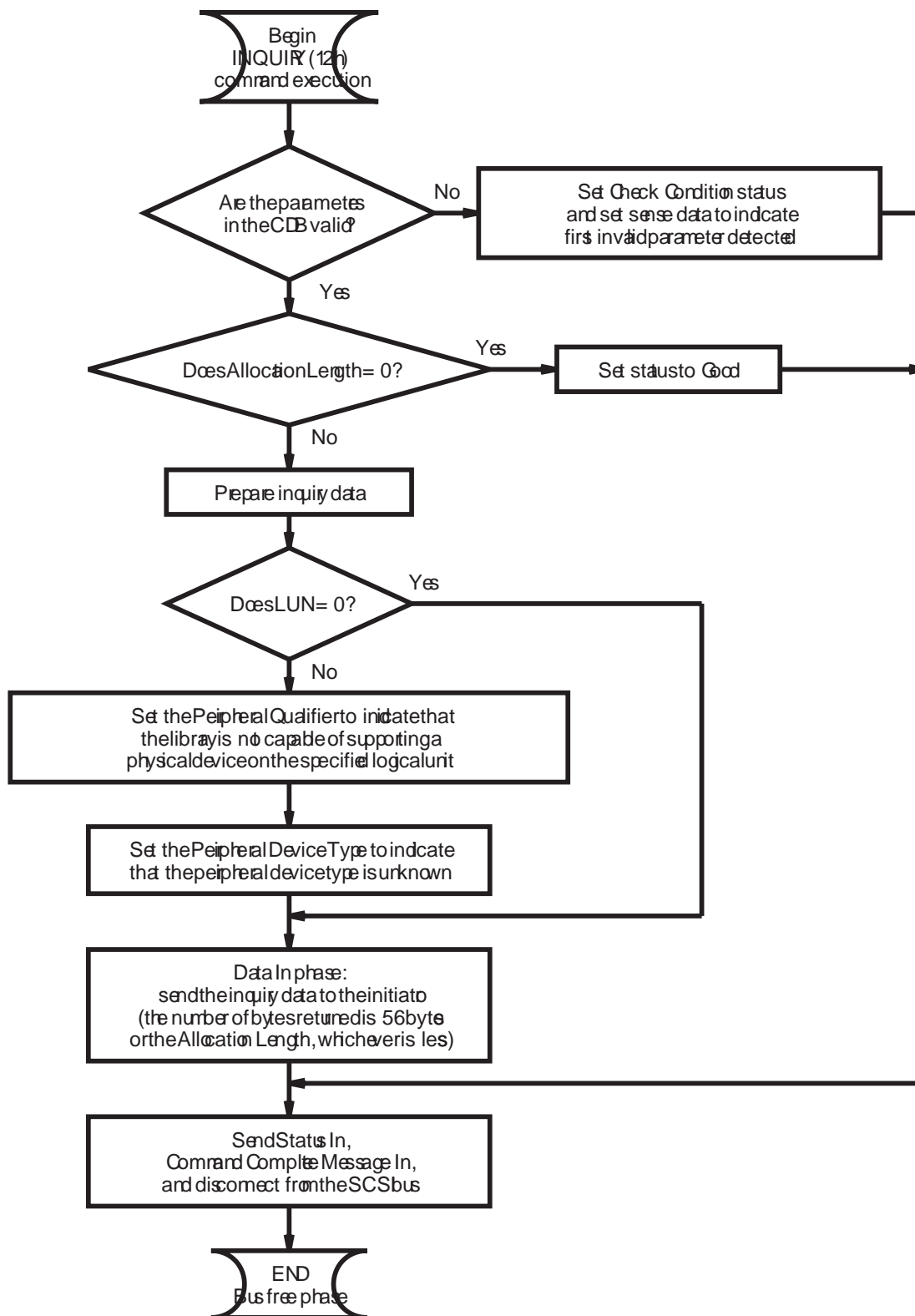


Figure 6-1 INQUIRY command execution

6.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the INQUIRY command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library never returns Busy status for the INQUIRY command.

Reservation Conflict

The library never returns Reservation Conflict status for the INQUIRY command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 6-1 for sense data).

Table 6-1 Invalid parameters in the INQUIRY CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	24h	00h	1	1	0	0	0002h	Invalid Page Code.

7 LOG SENSE (4Dh)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved			PPC	SP
02	PC		Page Code					
03	Reserved							
04								
05	(MSB) Parameter Pointer (LSB)							
06								
07	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
08								
09	0	0	Reserved				0	0

7.1 About This Command

The LOG SENSE command provides a means for the initiator to retrieve statistics and information on the state of the library. By using this command, you can receive the following information:

- Statistics (for example: retry counts, number of picks and places)
- History of recent library events
- State of the library hardware
- Element statistics
- Cartridge scan retries
- Element position information

7.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

PPC (Parameter Pointer Control) – Byte 01, Bit 1

The value for the PPC field must be 0. This directs the library to return the number of bytes that you specify in the Allocation Length field, beginning with the parameter code specified in the Parameter Pointer field (bytes 05 and 06). The library returns the bytes in ascending order of parameter codes from the specified log page. When both the PPC bit and the Parameter Pointer field are set to 0 and the Allocation Length is sufficient, the library returns all available log parameters for the specified log page to the initiator.

SP (Saved Parameters) – Byte 01, Bit 0

The value for this field must be 0, indicating that the library will perform the LOG SENSE command and will not save log parameters.

PC (Page Control) – Byte 02, Bits 6 and 7

The PC field must be set to 01b. This indicates that the library will always return the cumulative values for any log parameter requested. The library does not support any threshold values or default cumulative values.

Page Code – Byte 02, Bits 0 through 5

The Page Code field allows you to identify the page that you want the library to return. The value for this field must be one of the values specified in Table 7-1; otherwise, the library terminates the command with Check Condition status and sets the sense key to Illegal Request with the ASC set to Invalid Field in CDB.

Table 7-1 Valid values for the Page Code field

Page Code	Page Name	Description
00h	Supported Log Pages	Returns a list of supported log pages.
30h	System Statistics	Returns system statistics and retry counts.
31h	State	Returns the hardware state of the library, which includes the state of library sensors.
32h	History of Events	Returns a history of the most recent events that occurred during the operation of the library.
33h	Element Statistics	Returns element statistics and retry counts.
34h	Cartridge Scan Retries	Returns the number of times the library had to retry scanning the cartridge at the specified element address.
35h	Element Position	Returns the short and long axis positions of the specified element.

Parameter Pointer – Bytes 05 and 06

The Parameter Pointer field allows you to request parameter data by specifying any of the following types of values. (The value from this field becomes the value in the Parameter Code field of the requested log pages.)

- **A log parameter code.** When you request the System Statistics log page or the State log page, specify a log parameter code. The library returns the parameter data for that code and all other codes in ascending order until the value specified in the Allocation Length field has been reached or until it completes sending parameter data for the highest code.

Example If you request the State log page and specify 100 for this field, the library returns analog sensor information on all the analog sensors (100 through 103), if the Allocation Length is long enough.

- **A history record index value.** When you request the History of Events log page, specify an index value between –299 and 0. The library returns a history record index for that index and all other indexes in order (up to a maximum of 250 events), where 0 is the index of the most recent event, –1 is the index of the next most recent event, and so on.

Example If you specify –4 for this field and the Allocation Length is long enough, the library returns event history on the events starting with the most recent specified (–4) back 250 events to the oldest (–253). (Up to 250 events are returned for each request.)

- **An element address value.** When you request the Element Statistics log page, the Cartridge Scan Retries page, or the Element Position log page, specify an element address value. The library returns the parameter data for that element and all other elements in ascending element address order until the value specified in the Allocation Length field has been reached or until it completes sending parameter data for the element with the highest element address.

Example If you specify 82h for this field and the Allocation Length is long enough, the library returns statistics for the tape drives (element addresses 82 and 83) and the CHM (element address 86).

Notes:

- When the Parameter Pointer is 0, the library returns all available log parameters for the specified log page (up to the specified Allocation Length).
- When the Page Code field is set to 00h, the Parameter Pointer field must also be set to 0, indicating that you are requesting the Supported Log Pages page (00h), which lists all log pages.
- If the value of the Parameter Pointer field is not a valid parameter code for the specified page (and is not set to 0), the library terminates the command with Check Condition status and sets the sense key to Illegal Request and the ASC to Invalid Field in CDB.
- Element addresses may have been changed with the MODE SELECT command.

Allocation Length – Bytes 07 and 08

The Allocation Length field allows you to determine the maximum amount of data to be transferred from the library to the initiator. If you specify an allocation length that is greater than the bytes available, the library terminates the Data In phase when all bytes have been transferred. You can specify FFFFh to include all available data.

7.3 What the Library Returns

This section describes the log page structure and the log pages that the library supports. The LOG SENSE command returns a single log page specified in the Page Code field of the CDB. Each log page begins with a four-byte page header (bytes 00 through 03), followed by zero or more variable-length log parameters defined for that page. The log page format is defined below.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Reserved		Page Code					
01	Reserved							
02	(MSB) <div>Page Length</div> (LSB)							
03								
04	Log Parameter (First) ⋮ Log Parameter (Last)							
⋮								
<i>n</i>								

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 0 through 5

The Page Code field identifies which log page is being transferred. This field contains one of the codes described in Table 7-1.

Page Length – Bytes 02 and 03

The Page Length field specifies the length, in bytes, of the following Log Parameters. The value returned for this field depends on the value you specified for the Page Code and the Parameter Pointer in the CDB. This value is independent of what you specified for the Allocation Length.

Log Parameters – Bytes 04 through n

Log parameters are data structures that are contained in log pages and can be one of the following:

- Data counters that record a count of a particular event
- A numeric value indicating the state of the library hardware
- A string that contains the library event history

The general format of a log parameter is shown in the following section.

Log Parameter Format

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) Parameter Code (LSB)							
01								
02	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC		RSVD	LP
03	Parameter Length ($n-3$)							
04 ⋮ n	Parameter Value							

Each log parameter begins with a four-byte header followed by one or more bytes of parameter value data. The fields in the log parameter are described below.

Parameter Code – Bytes 00 and 01

The Parameter Code field identifies which log parameter is being transferred for that log page. The valid values for this field depend on the type of log page the library is returning, as described later in this chapter.

Parameter Control (DU, DS, TSD, ETC, TMC, LP) – Byte 02

The Parameter Control field consists of the following bits:

DU – Disable Update This bit indicates that the library updates the log parameter value to reflect all events that should be recorded by that parameter. This bit is always 0.

DS – Disable Save This bit indicates that the library does not support saving for that log parameter. This bit is always 1.

TSD – Target Save Disable This bit indicates that the library provides a self-defined method for saving log parameters. This bit is always 0.

ETC – Enable Threshold Comparison This bit indicates a comparison to the threshold value is not performed whenever the cumulative value is updated. This bit is always 0.

TMC – Threshold Met Criteria This field defines the basis for comparison of the cumulative and threshold values. This field is always 0.

LP – List Parameter The List Parameter bit indicates the format of the log parameter:

- 0 – The parameter is a data counter.
- 1 – The parameter is a list parameter.

Parameter Length – Byte 03

The Parameter Length field specifies the length in bytes of the following Parameter Value field (bytes 04 through *n*).

Parameter Value – Bytes 04 through *n*

The Parameter Value field can be one of the following:

- A data counter for a library event, which can be either a two-byte or four-byte value or a one-byte flag.
- A value that indicates the state of a certain part of the library hardware. If this field is 1, the state of the part is on. If this field is 0, the state of the part is off.
- A string that describes a library history event.

The following sections describe all log parameters that the library supports.

Supported Log Pages Page (Page Code 00h)

The Supported Log Pages page lists all log pages that the library supports. The format for this log page is shown below.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Reserved		Page Code (00h)					
01	Reserved							
02	Page Length (7h)							
03								
04	Supported Log Pages page (00h)							
05	System Statistics log page (30h)							
06	State log page (31h)							
07	History of Events log page (32h)							
08	Element log page (33h)							
09	Cartridge Scan Retries page (34h)							
10	Element Positions page (35h)							

System Statistics Log Page (Page Code 30h)

The System Statistics log page returns the cumulative library system statistics from nonvolatile memory shown in Table 7-2. These values are not reset after power cycles or resets.

Table 7-2 Library system statistics (saved in nonvolatile memory)

Log Parameter Function	Log Parameter Code	Parameter Control Byte						Parameter Length
		DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	LP	
Total Number of Moves	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
Total Number of Pick Retries	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
Total Number of Put Retries	2	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
Total Number of Scans	3	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
Total Number of Scan Retries	4	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
Total Number of Scan Failures	5	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
Reserved*	6	0	1	0	0	0	0	4
Reserved*	7	0	1	0	0	0	0	4

* A value of 0 is returned for reserved parameters.

State Log Page (Page Code 31h)

The State log page returns log parameters that indicate the current state of the library hardware sensors. The library includes two types of sensors:

- Digital
- Analog

For each sensor in the library, there is a corresponding log parameter that shows the value for that sensor. For the digital sensors, a 1 in the Parameter Value field indicates the sensor corresponding to the log parameter is on; a 0 indicates the sensor is off. For the analog sensors, the value in the Parameter Value field indicates the state of the sensor. Analog sensor values may be negative numbers.

Digital Sensors

Table 7-3 indicates the state of the digital sensors of the library.

Table 7-3 Log parameters for digital sensors

Log Parameter Function	Log Parameter Code	Parameter Control Byte						Parameter Length
		DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	LP	
Door Closed	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Key Lock	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Gripper Home	2	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Cart. Seated	3	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Reserved*	4	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Drum Home (EXB-220) Reserved* (EXB-210)	5	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Reserved*	6	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Reserved*	7	0	1	0	0	0	0	1

* A value of 0 is returned for reserved parameters.

Analog Sensors

Table 7-4 indicates the state of the analog sensors in the library.

Table 7-4 Log parameters for the analog sensors

Log Parameter Function	Log Parameter Code	Parameter Control Byte						Parameter Length
		DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	LP	
Temperature (°C)	100	0	1	0	0	0	0	2
+12V (millivolts)	101	0	1	0	0	0	0	2
–12V (millivolts)	102	0	1	0	0	0	0	2
+24V (millivolts)	103	0	1	0	0	0	0	2

History of Events Log Page (Page Code 32h)

The History of Events log page returns a history of recent events that occurred in the library. The library's history buffer contains 300 entries. The library is able to send up to 250 events from the history buffer in response to each LOG SENSE command; therefore, it takes two LOG SENSE commands to receive all 300 entries from the buffer.

Each of the library's events is a string that consists of two fields:

- A description of the event
- A time stamp indicating the time and date the event occurred

Each event is 80 bytes of ASCII characters and is divided as follows:

- Bytes 0 through 4 specify the offset from the most recent history event (000).
- Bytes 5 through 16 specify the process and line number in the process from which the history message originated.
- Bytes 17 through 57 provide a description of the history event.
- Bytes 58 through 75 specify the time and date of the history event.
- Bytes 76 through 80 specify an internal firmware sequence number.

Figure 7-1 shows an example from a dump over the serial port of a typical history of events for the library.

7 LOG SENSE (4Dh)

C O M M A N D H I S T O R Y						
=====						
IDX	From:	Line	Event Description:	Time:	Date:	Seq
--	--	--	--:--:-- --/--/-- --			
000	STATI	0164	Status Ret: SNS=0x0 ASC=0x00 ASCQ=0x00	11:33:36	02-15-93	00574
001	RLS	0127	Release Command, Elem=0 ResId=0	11:33:36	02-15-93	00573
002	ISCSI	0978	Selected w/ATN, HostId=6, 1stMsg=0xc0	11:33:36	02-15-93	00572
003	STATI	0164	Status Ret: SNS=0x0 ASC=0x00 ASCQ=0x00	11:33:05	02-15-93	00571
004	ISCSI	0768	Reconnected to Host 6	11:33:05	02-15-93	00570
005	ISCSI	1423	Attempting Reconnect to Host 6	11:33:05	02-15-93	00569
006	MOVE	1042	Move from 2 to 7 complete	11:33:05	02-15-93	00562
007	PUT	0569	Put finished with 0 retries	11:33:05	02-15-93	00559
008	PUT	0272	Put to slot 7 at lservo = 7165	11:33:02	02-15-93	00558
009	SERVO	0490	Go to 7160	11:33:01	02-15-93	00550
010	PICK	0246	Pick from slot 2	11:32:58	02-15-93	00544
011	SERVO	0490	Go to 3380	11:32:57	02-15-93	00539
012	MOVE	0306	Move Cartridge from 2 to 7	11:32:55	02-15-93	00532
013	MSGI	0132	Disconnecting to Process Command	11:32:55	02-15-93	00525
014	SMOVE	0163	Move Cmd, Source=2 Dest=7	11:32:55	02-15-93	00524
015	ISCSI	0978	Selected w/ATN, HostId=6, 1stMsg=0xc0	11:32:55	02-15-93	00523
016	STATI	0164	Status Ret: SNS=0x0 ASC=0x00 ASCQ=0x00	11:32:37	02-15-93	00522
017	RESRV	0134	Reserve Unit Cmd	11:32:37	02-15-93	00521
018	ISCSI	0978	Selected w/ATN, HostId=6, 1stMsg=0xc0	11:32:37	02-15-93	00520
019	STATI	0164	Status Ret: SNS=0x0 ASC=0x00 ASCQ=0x00	11:32:19	02-15-93	00519
020	DATAI	0142	Sending 24 Data Bytes to Host	11:32:18	02-15-93	00518
021	MDSNS	0138	Mode Sns Cmd, PC=0 PCode=0x1d Alloc=24	11:32:18	02-15-93	00517
022	ISCSI	0978	Selected w/ATN, HostId=6, 1stMsg=0xc0	11:32:18	02-15-93	00516
023	STATI	0164	Status Ret: SNS=0x0 ASC=0x00 ASCQ=0x00	11:32:07	02-15-93	00515
024	MDSEL	0427	Processing Element Address Page	11:32:07	02-15-93	00514
025	DATAO	0145	Receiving 24 Data Bytes from Host	11:32:07	02-15-93	00513
026	MDSEL	0153	Mode Select Cmd, SP=1 Param Length=24	11:32:07	02-15-93	00512
027	ISCSI	0978	Selected w/ATN, HostId=6, 1stMsg=0xc0	11:32:07	02-15-93	00511
028	STATI	0164	Status Ret: SNS=0x0 ASC=0x00 ASCQ=0x00	11:31:57	02-15-93	00510
029	DATAI	0142	Sending 18 Data Bytes to Host	11:31:57	02-15-93	00509
030	RQSNS	0185	Sense Data: SNS=0x6 ASC=0x29 ASCQ=0x00	11:31:57	02-15-93	00508
031	RQSNS	0153	Request Sense Cmd, Alloc Length=18	11:31:57	02-15-93	00507
032	ISCSI	0978	Selected w/ATN, HostId=6, 1stMsg=0xc0	11:31:57	02-15-93	00506
033	STATI	0164	Status Ret: SNS=0x2 ASC=0x29 ASCQ=0x00	11:31:55	02-15-93	00505
034	TUR	0154	Can't Exec Cmd, Unit Attn Cond	11:31:55	02-15-93	00504
035	TUR	0110	Test Unit Ready Command	11:31:55	02-15-93	00503
036	ISCSI	0985	Selected Without ATN, HostId=6	11:31:55	02-15-93	00502
037	PWRUP	1021	Power up complete	11:31:41	02-15-93	00501
038	PWRUP	0872	Motion control i/f: SCSI 1	11:31:41	02-15-93	00496
039	SERVO	0490	Go to 250	11:31:38	02-15-93	00487
040	SERVO	0412	Home Grip	11:31:38	02-15-93	00468
041	SERVO	0490	Go to 12370	11:31:35	02-15-93	00419
042	SERVO	0412	Home Grip	11:31:34	02-15-93	00390
043	SERVO	0490	Go to 5290	11:31:32	02-15-93	00353

Figure 7-1 Sample history of events

Each log parameter for the History of Events log page has the following format:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) Parameter Code (LSB)							
01								
02	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
03	Parameter Length (50h)							
04	<i>80 characters of event</i>							
:								
83								

Parameter Code – Bytes 00 and 01

The Parameter Code field indicates the index of the history record: 0 is the index of the most recent event, –1 is the index of the next most recent, and so on. The library keeps 300 of the most recent events (indexed 0 through –299).

The event history that the library maintains includes information about SCSI commands and phases, motion commands, retries and errors, diagnostics, and system status.

Element Statistics Page (Page Code 33h)

The Element Statistics page returns cumulative statistics, such as the total number of puts to the element, the total number of times the library had to retry a put operation to the element, and the total number of times the library had to retry a pick operation from the element. These values are stored in nonvolatile memory for each element.

The value that you specify for the Parameter Pointer field of the CDB (bytes 05 and 06) determines the value that the library returns in the Parameter Code field of the Element Statistics page. This value specifies the first element (starting Element Address) for which information is returned.

An Element Statistics page is returned for all subsequent elements (in ascending element address order) until the allocation length specified in the CDB has been reached or all element information has been sent. Element addresses can be changed with the MODE SELECT command.

Note: The Parameter Pointer specified in the CDB indicates the starting element address and must be a valid element address for the library.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) Parameter Code (Element Address) (LSB)							
01								
02	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
03	Parameter Length (8h)							
04	Total Puts							
05								
06								
07								
08	Total Put Retries							
09								
10	Total Pick Retries							
11								

Parameter Code – Bytes 00 and 01

The Parameter Code field indicates the element address for which statistical information is being provided. The element address may have been set by the MODE SELECT command.

Parameter Length – Byte 03

The Parameter Length field indicates the number of bytes that follow this field on the Element Statistics page.

Total Puts – Bytes 04 through 07

The Total Puts field indicates the total number of puts to the element location indicated by the element address. The total number of puts is saved in nonvolatile memory.

Total Put Retries – Bytes 08 and 09

The Total Put Retries field indicates the total number of times the library had to retry a put operation to the element indicated by element address. The total number of put retries is saved in nonvolatile memory.

Total Pick Retries – Bytes 10 and 11

The Total Pick Retries field indicates the number of times the library had to retry a pick operation from the element indicated by the element address. The total number of pick retries is saved in nonvolatile memory.

Cartridge Scan Retries Page (Page Code 34h)

The Cartridge Scan Retries page returns the total number of times the library had to retry scanning the cartridge located in the element. This value is stored in nonvolatile memory for each cartridge and is reset whenever the library is reset, powered-on, or the door is opened.

The value that you specify for the Parameter Pointer field of the CDB (bytes 05 and 06) determines the value that the library returns in the Parameter Code field of the Cartridge Scan Retries page. This value specifies the first element (starting Element Address) for which information is returned.

A Cartridge Scan Retries page is returned for all subsequent elements (in ascending element address order) until the allocation length specified in the CDB has been reached or all element information has been sent. Element addresses can be changed with the MODE SELECT command.

Note: The Parameter Pointer specified in the CDB indicates the starting element address and must be a valid element address for the library.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) Parameter Code (Element Address) (LSB)							
01								
02	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
03	Parameter Length (2h)							
04	Total Scan Retries							
05								

Parameter Code – Bytes 00 and 01

The Parameter Code field indicates the element address for which statistical information is being provided. The element address is set by the MODE SELECT command.

Parameter Length – Byte 03

The Parameter Length field indicates the number of bytes that follow this field on the Cartridge Scan Retries page.

Total Scan Retries – Bytes 04 and 05

The Total Scan Retries field indicates the total number of times the library had to retry scanning the cartridge that is now located in the element indicated by the element address. Scan retries move with the cartridge and are reset each time the library is reset, powered-on, or when the door is opened.

Note: If no bar code scanner is installed, the number returned for Total Scan Retries is always 0.

Element Position Page (Page Code 35h)

The Element Position page returns the axis positions of the specified element in the library. These values are stored in nonvolatile memory for each element.

The value that you specify for the Parameter Pointer field of the CDB (bytes 05 and 06) determines the value that the library returns in the Parameter Code field of the Element Position page. This value specifies the first element (starting Element Address) for which information is returned.

An Element Position page is returned for all subsequent elements (in ascending element address order) until the allocation length specified in the CDB has been reached or all element information has been sent. Element addresses can be changed with the MODE SELECT command.

Note: The Parameter Pointer specified in the CDB indicates the starting element address and must be a valid element address for the library.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) Parameter Code (Element Address) (LSB)							
01								
02	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
03	Parameter Length (6h)							
04	Long Axis Position							
05								
06	Short Axis Position							
07								
08	Reserved							
09								

Parameter Code – Bytes 00 and 01

The Parameter Code field indicates the element address for which statistical information is being provided. The element address may have been set by the MODE SELECT command.

Parameter Length – Byte 03

The Parameter Length field indicates the number of bytes that follow this field on the Element Position page.

Long Axis Position – Bytes 04 and 05

The Long Axis Position field indicates the distance the CHM has to move along the long axis from its home position to the specified element.

Short Axis Position – Bytes 06 and 07

The Depth field indicates the distance the CHM has to move along the short axis from its home position to touch the data cartridge magazine or a cartridge in the magazine.

Note: If the specified element is a tape drive or the CHM, a value of 0 is returned for this field.

7.4 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 7-2 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

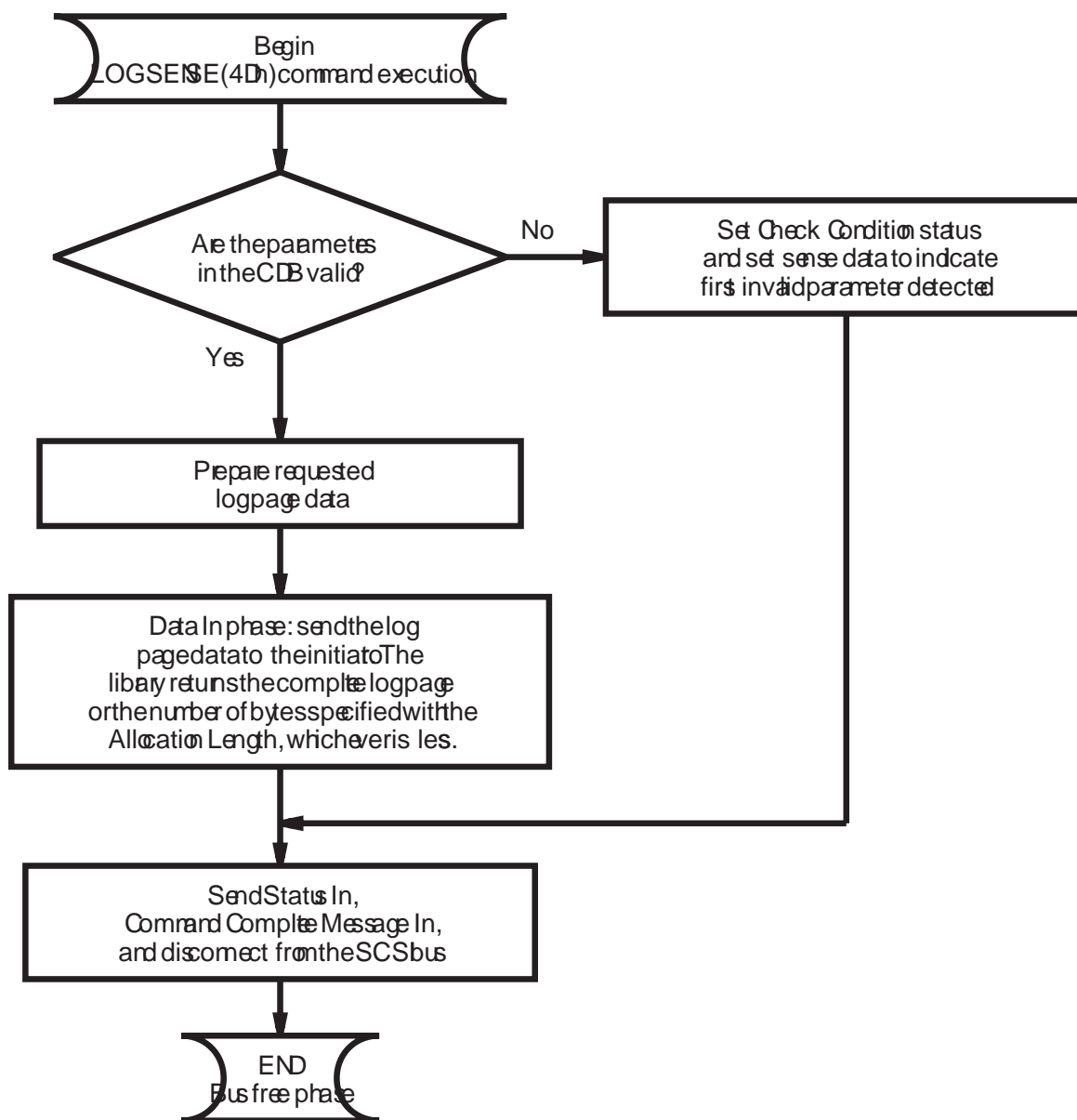


Figure 7-2 LOG SENSE command execution

7.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the LOG SENSE command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 7-5 for sense data).

Table 7-5 Invalid parameters in the LOG SENSE CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV	C/D	BPV	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error Description
5h	24h	0h	1	1	1	–	–	A reserved bit is set in the CDB. The pointers point to the bit in error.
5h	24h	0h	1	1	1	7	0002h	The PC field is incorrect. It must be set to 01b.
5h	24h	0h	1	1	1	5	0002h	Invalid page code.
5h	24h	0h	1	1	0	0	0005h	Invalid parameter pointer.

Notes

8 MODE SELECT (15h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1
01	Logical Unit Number			PF	Reserved			SP
02	Reserved							
03	Reserved							
04	Parameter List Length							
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

8.1 About This Command

The MODE SELECT command enables you to specify operating parameters for the library. These parameters configure the library upon power-up or a reset condition. You provide the parameters in a parameter list that can include the following:

- 4 bytes for the Parameter List Header (required)
- 20 bytes for the Element Address Assignment page
- 84 bytes for the LCD Mode page
- 4 bytes for the Parity page

► **Important** The values sent to the library apply to all initiators in a multi-initiator environment. If an initiator issues a MODE SELECT command that changes any current or saved operating parameters, the library returns a Check Condition status with a sense key of Unit Attention (6h) and an ASC and ASCQ of Mode Parameters Changed (2Ah and 01h, respectively) to all other initiators that issue a request to the library.

Notes:

- Before issuing any MODE SELECT commands, issue a MODE SENSE (1Ah) command with the PC field set to 1h and the Page Code field set to 3Fh to determine which pages of mode parameters are supported, which parameters within the pages are changeable, and the supported length of each page. See Chapter 9 for more information about the MODE SENSE command.
- When you issue a MODE SELECT command, the parameters are not changed until the library has verified that the new values are valid. If any value is not valid, the library returns the appropriate error (see Section 8.4) and does not change the MODE SELECT parameters.

8.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

PF (Page Format) – Byte 01, Bit 4

This field specifies the page format used by the library. The library supports the page format specified by SCSI-2. This value must be 1.

SP (Saved Page) – Byte 01, Bit 0

The library supports the saved page function. The values for this field are as follows:

- 0 – Current configuration values are changed to the values sent to the library. Saved values stored in nonvolatile memory are not affected.
- 1 – Current configuration values specified by this command are saved in nonvolatile memory and used for subsequent operations.

Parameter List Length – Byte 04

This field indicates the length of the entire parameter list. The parameter list length is equal to the length of one Parameter List Header (4 bytes) plus the lengths of all pages to be transferred. Table 8-1 lists the page lengths. If no pages are to be transferred, specify 0 for the Parameter List Length field.

Note: A parameter list length of 4 is not valid. When you send the Parameter List Header, you must send at least one page with it.

Table 8-1 MODE SELECT page lengths

Page	Length (in bytes)
Element Address Assignment page	20 (14h)
LCD Mode page	84 (54h)
Parity page	4 (04h)

For example, if you want to transfer the Parity page, set the parameter list length to 8 (08h):

$$\begin{array}{r}
 4 \text{ bytes (Parameter List Header length)} \\
 + 4 \text{ bytes (Parity page length)} \\
 \hline
 8 \text{ bytes}
 \end{array}$$

If you want to transfer the Element Address Assignment page, Parity page, and LCD Mode page, set the parameter list length to 112 (70h):

$$\begin{array}{r}
 4 \text{ bytes (Parameter List Header length)} \\
 20 \text{ bytes (Element Address Assignment page length)} \\
 84 \text{ bytes (LCD Mode page length)} \\
 + 4 \text{ bytes (Parity page length)} \\
 \hline
 112 \text{ bytes}
 \end{array}$$

Parameter List Header

If you send one or more parameter pages with the MODE SELECT command, you must send a Parameter List Header. Do not send the Parameter List Header if you are sending no parameter pages.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Reserved							
01								
02								
03								

All fields of the Parameter List Header are reserved. You must specify a value of 0 for each field.

Element Address Assignment Page (Page Code 1Dh)

This section describes the fields for the Element Address Assignment page and the values you can specify for these fields. Refer to “Assigning Element Addresses” on page 8-6, for an explanation of element addresses.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Reserved		Page Code (1Dh)					
01	Page Length							
02	(MSB) Medium Transport Element Address (LSB)							
03								
04	(MSB) Number of Medium Transport Elements (LSB)							
05								
06	(MSB) First Storage Element Address (LSB)							
07								
08	(MSB) Number of Storage Elements (LSB)							
09								
10	(MSB) First Import/Export Element Address (LSB)							
11								
12	(MSB) Number of Import/Export Elements (LSB)							
13								
14	(MSB) First Data Transfer Element Address (LSB)							
15								
16	(MSB) Number of Data Transfer Elements (LSB)							
17								
18	Reserved							
19								

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 5 through 0

This field identifies the Element Address Assignment page. The value of this field must be 1Dh.

Page Length – Byte 01

This field indicates the length, in bytes, of the Element Address Assignment parameter list. The valid value for this field is 12h (18), which indicates that there are an additional 18 bytes of parameter data that follow this byte.

Medium Transport Element Address – Bytes 02 and 03

This field identifies the address of the cartridge handling mechanism (CHM). The default value for this field is 56h (86).

Number of Medium Transport Elements – Bytes 04 and 05

This field identifies the number of CHMs within the library. The library has only one CHM. The valid value for this field is 1.

First Storage Element Address – Bytes 06 and 07

This field identifies the starting address of the cartridge storage locations. The default starting address is 00h (0).

Number of Storage Elements – Bytes 08 and 09

This field identifies the number of cartridge storage locations within the library. The number of cartridge storage locations for the EXB-210, including the fixed cartridge slot, is 11; the number of cartridge storage locations for the EXB-220, including the fixed cartridge slot, is 21. The valid values for this field are Bh (11) for the EXB-210 and 15h (21) for the EXB-220.

First Import/Export Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

This field identifies the address of the import/export element. Because the library does not have an import/export element, the value for this field must be 0.

Number of Import/Export Elements – Bytes 12 and 13

This field identifies the total number of locations used for importing and exporting cartridges to and from the cartridge storage areas. Since the library does not have an import/export element, the value for this field must be 0.

First Data Transfer Element Address – Bytes 14 and 15

This field identifies the starting address of the installed tape drives. The default starting address is 52h (82).

Number of Data Transfer Elements – Bytes 16 and 17

This field identifies the number of tape drives installed. The valid values for this field are 0, 1, or 2.

Note: The actual number of tape drives installed cannot be changed by this field because the library automatically determines the number of drives during power-up. It is not an error to specify a value that is different from the actual number of drives installed, as long as that value is 0, 1, or 2. If the value is not 0, 1, or 2, the library returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request.

Assigning Element Addresses

An *element* is a way of classifying various components in the library. Element addresses reference specific physical locations in the library. The library contains three element types: the CHM, cartridge slots, and the tape drives (known as the medium transport, storage, and data transfer elements, respectively). Each element requires an address so that it can be identified during a SCSI command operation. The library has default addresses assigned to each element. Figure 1-5 on page 1-8 and Figure 1-6 on page 1-9 show the default element addresses for the library.

If you want to change the addresses of the library's elements, use the Element Address Assignment page. In this page, you assign a starting address for each element type (CHM, cartridge slots, and tape drives) and then specify the total number of elements of that type. The element addresses for the cartridge slots and tape drives will be numbered consecutively, with the first address for that type being the starting element address that you specify.

Because the library supports the saved page function, you can save the element address values by setting the SP bit in the CDB to 1. These values configure the library upon power-up or a reset condition.

► **Important** For the starting element addresses, you can specify any 16-bit binary number, with the following conditions:

- Element addresses must not overlap.
 - Addresses for the storage elements must be consecutive. For the EXB-210, the highest address you can assign for the first storage element is FFF5h. For the EXB-220, the highest address you can assign for the first storage element is FFE Bh. (This causes the last storage element to be numbered FFFFh.)
 - Addresses for the data transfer elements must also be consecutive. The highest address you can assign for the first data transfer element is FFFEh.
-

LCD Mode Page (Page Code 22h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Reserved		Page Code (22h)					
01	Parameter Length (52h)							
02	LCD Security Valid	LCD Security	Reserved		Write Line 1	Write Line 2	Write Line 3	Write Line 4
03	Reserved							
04 : 23	Display Line 1							
24 : 43	Display Line 2							
44 : 63	Display Line 3							
64 : 83	Display Line 4							

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 5 through 0

This field identifies the LCD Mode page. The value of this field is 22h.

Parameter Length – Byte 01

This field indicates the length, in bytes, of the LCD Mode page. The valid value for this field is 52h (82), which indicates that 82 bytes of data follow this byte.

LCD Security Valid – Byte 02, Bit 7

This bit indicates whether a change to LCD security is being requested. When LCD security is enabled, access to certain LCD menu options is prevented. The settings for this bit are as follows:

- 0 – LCD security is not being changed. The value of the LCD Security bit (byte 02, bit 6) should be ignored.
- 1 – LCD security is being changed according to the value of the LCD Security bit (byte 02, bit 6).

LCD Security – Byte 02, Bit 6

When the LCD Security Valid bit (byte 02, bit 7) is 1, the LCD Security bit enables or disables LCD security. The settings for this bit are as follows:

- 0 – Disable LCD security (factory default)
- 1 – Enable LCD security

When LCD security is enabled, access to the following LCD activities is prevented:

- Changing the control mode
- Changing SCSI IDs
- Changing SCSI parity checking
- Changing the model of the installed tape drive
- Performing LCD diagnostics
- Using the options for cleaning the tape drives
- Connecting a serial port to a tape drive
- Setting the library's serial number

A user trying to access the LCD menu options for these activities receives an error message.

Note: You can also enable LCD security from the operator panel using a password. (Refer to *EXB-210 and EXB-220 8mm Library Installation and Operation* for information.) Whichever method you use to enable LCD security (operator panel or MODE SELECT), you must use the same method to disable LCD security. That is, if you enable LCD security through the operator panel, you must disable it through the operator panel. Similarly, if you enable LCD security using a MODE SELECT command, you must disable it with MODE SELECT.

Write Line 1 – Byte 02, Bit 3

This field controls the text for Line 1 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Library default text. For the EXB-210, this line is “ Exabyte EXB-210 ”.
- 1 – Text you specify in bytes 4 through 23 of the LCD Mode page.

Write Line 2 – Byte 02, Bit 2

This field controls the text for Line 2 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Library default text, for example, “VER x.yy.zz hh:mm:ss”, where x.yy.zz is the firmware version currently stored in flash memory and hh:mm:ss is the current time in hours, minutes, and seconds.
- 1 – Text you specify in bytes 24 through 43 of the LCD Mode page.

Write Line 3 – Byte 02, Bit 1

This field controls the text for Line 3 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Library default text, for example, a high-level status message.
- 1 – Text you specify in bytes 44 through 63 of the LCD Mode page.

Write Line 4 – Byte 02, Bit 0

This field controls the text for Line 4 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Library default text, for example, a low-level status message.
- 1 – Text you specify in bytes 64 through 83 of the LCD Mode page.

Display Line 1 – Bytes 04 through 23

This field enables you to specify text to display on Line 1 of the LCD. You can use up to 20 characters for this text. If you use less than 20 characters, at least one byte following the text must be a 00h.

Note: Refer to Appendix C for the LCD character set for the Display Line fields.

Display Line 2 – Bytes 24 through 43

This field enables you to specify text to display on Line 2 of the LCD. You can use up to 20 characters for this text. If you use less than 20 characters, at least one byte following the text must be a 00h.

Display Line 3 – Bytes 44 through 63

This field enables you to specify text to display on Line 3 of the LCD. You can use up to 20 characters for this text. If you use less than 20 characters, at least one byte following the text must be a 00h.

Display Line 4 – Bytes 64 through 83

This field enables you to specify text to display on Line 4 of the LCD. You can use up to 20 characters for this text. If you use less than 20 characters, at least one byte following the text must be a 00h.

Parity Page (Page Code 00h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Reserved		Page Code (00h)					
01	Parameter Length (02h)							
02	Reserved		Parity	Reserved				
03	Maximum Parity Retries							

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 5 through 0

This field identifies the Parity page. The value of this field is 00h.

Parameter Length – Byte 01

This field indicates the length, in bytes, of the Parity parameter list. The valid value for this field is 02h, which indicates that there are two additional bytes of parameter data that follow this byte.

Parity – Byte 02, Bit 5

This bit enables or disables SCSI bus parity checking, as follows:

- 0 – Disable bus parity checking
- 1 – Enable bus parity checking

This feature is factory set in nonvolatile memory. The factory default is 1.

Note: You can also set parity checking with the LCD parity option. When you use the operator panel to set the parity option, the library saves the setting as the new MODE SELECT saved value.

The most recent setting of this bit takes precedence: that is, if you previously saved a MODE SELECT value of 1 (enable parity checking) and then use the operator panel to change the setting to 0 (disable), the new setting of 0 takes precedence over the previous setting.

Maximum Parity Retries – Byte 03

This field specifies the maximum number of times the library will retry the message out phase, command out phase, or data out phase when a parity error occurs. The valid values for this field are 0 through 255, where 0 means that no retries are performed. The factory default value for this field is 1.

8.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed (see Chapter 3).

Figure 8-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in both the CDB and MODE SELECT data. Table 8-2 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB and in the MODE SELECT data.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase or if parity errors are detected on the MODE SELECT data.

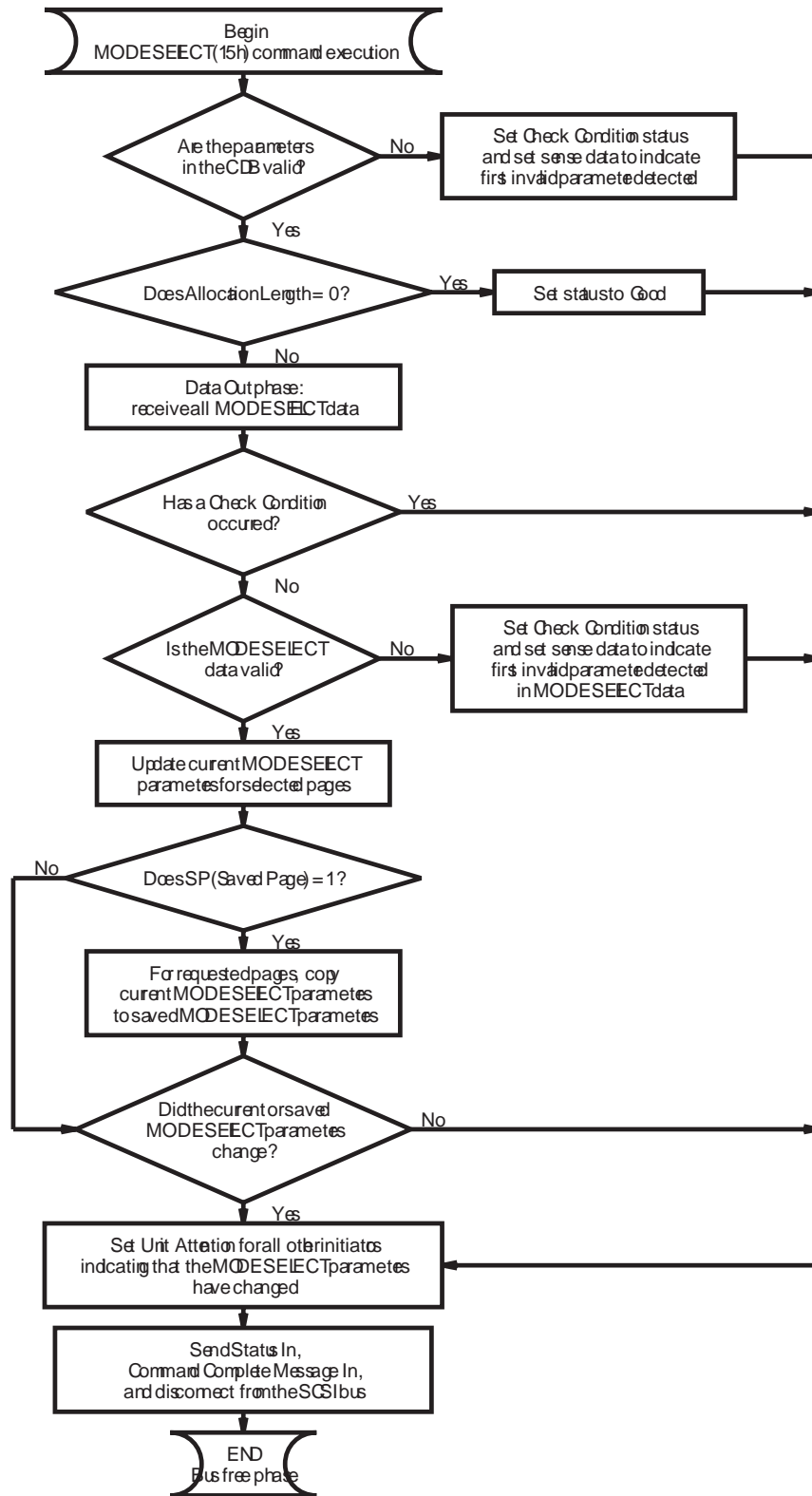


Figure 8-1 MODE SELECT command execution

8.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the MODE SELECT command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors (that is, when the requested MODE SELECT parameters have been copied over the current MODE SELECT settings and, if requested, the saved MODE SELECT settings).

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when the library is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status for the following reasons:

- The library is reserved by a different initiator.
- One or more of the library's elements are reserved by a different initiator and an attempt is made to change any element address.

See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 8-2 for sense data).

- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the MODE SELECT data.
- A parameter in the MODE SELECT data is invalid (see Table 8-2 for sense data).

Table 8-2 Invalid parameters in the MODE SELECT CDB and mode data

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	1Ah	00h	1	1	0	0	0004h	Invalid Parameter List Length.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	4h	0001h	Invalid PF (page format).
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid values in the Parameter List Header. All values must be 0. The value of the field pointer is the value of the first field that contains a non-zero value (00, 01, 02, or 03).
5h	26h	00h	1	0	1	5h	*	Invalid Page Code.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	1	7h	*	Reserved bits set in the first byte of one of the MODE SELECT pages.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid Page Length.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	*	Reserved bits set in the reserved fields 22 or 23 (bytes 18 or 19 of the Element Address Assignment page).
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Address overlap. The field pointer is set to the value representing the field in the Element Address Assignment page which caused the address overlap, as follows: 0006h Medium Transport Element Address 000Ah Storage Element Address
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid number of transport elements.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid number of medium storage elements.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid number of import/export elements.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid number of data transfer elements.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid first import/export address.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Storage element addresses are not consecutive.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Data transfer element addresses are not consecutive.

* Field pointer depends on the order in which the pages are sent.

Notes

9 MODE SENSE (1Ah)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0
01	Logical Unit Number			RSVD	DBD	Reserved		
02	PC		Page Code					
03	Reserved							
04	Allocation Length							
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

9.1 About This Command

The MODE SENSE command enables the library to report its operating mode parameters to the initiator. The initiator can request one or all pages of mode parameters. Each response includes four bytes for the Parameter List Header, followed by the specified number of bytes for each page:

- 20 bytes for the Element Address Assignment page
- 4 bytes for the Transport Geometry Descriptor page
- 20 bytes for the Device Capabilities page
- 84 bytes for the LCD Mode page
- 4 bytes for the Parity page

Using the MODE SELECT (15h) command, you can change the values of all of these parameters, except the Transport Geometry Descriptor page and the Device Capabilities page.

9.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

DBD (Disable Block Descriptors) – Byte 01, Bit 3

The library does not use block descriptors. The value for this field must be 1.

PC (Page Control) – Byte 02, Bits 7 and 6

This field defines the type of parameters that are to be returned for the MODE SENSE command. Specify one of the following values:

0 – Current values Indicates that the library should return the current parameter values. The current values returned are:

- The parameters set in the last successful MODE SELECT command.
- The saved values, if a MODE SELECT command has not been executed since the last power-on or reset.
- The default values, if saved values are not available.

1 – Changeable values Indicates that the library should return the changeable parameter masks. The pages you request are returned and indicate which parameters you can change. All bits of parameters that you can change are set to 1. All bits of parameters that you cannot change are set to 0. The Page Code and Parameter List Length fields contain actual values.

Note: Before issuing a MODE SELECT command, issue a MODE SENSE command with the PC field set to 1 and the Page Code field set to 3Fh. This will allow you to determine the supported pages, the changeable parameters within the pages, and the supported length of each page.

2 – Default values Indicates that the library should return the default values. The pages you request are returned, with each supported parameter set to its default value. Parameters not supported by the library are set to 0.

3 – Saved values Indicates that the library should return the saved values. The pages you request are returned, with each supported parameter set to its saved value. Parameters not supported by the library are set to 0.

Note: For a PC value of 3, if no page has been saved, the library returns default values.

Page Code – Byte 02, Bits 5 through 0

This field allows you to specify which page the library should return. Specify one of the following values:

- 1Dh – Element Address Assignment page
- 1Eh – Transport Geometry Descriptor page
- 1Fh – Device Capabilities page
- 22h – LCD Mode page
- 00h – Parity page
- 3Fh – All pages (in the above order)

Allocation Length – Byte 04

This field allows you to specify the length of the parameter list the library will return. The maximum length you need to specify to receive all pages is 136 (88h) bytes.

The library terminates the data in phase when the number of bytes specified by the Allocation Length have been transferred or when all available MODE SENSE data have been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less.

9.3 What the Library Returns

Parameter List Header

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Mode Data Length							
01	Reserved							
02								
03								

Mode Data Length – Byte 00

This field indicates the number of bytes of parameter information the library is returning as a result of this command, excluding the Sense Data Length byte but including the three additional Parameter List Header bytes.

Element Address Assignment Page (Page Code 1Dh)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	PS	RSVD	Page Code (1Dh)					
01	Parameter Length (12h)							
02	(MSB) Medium Transport Element Address (LSB)							
03								
04	(MSB) Number of Medium Transport Elements (LSB)							
05								
06	(MSB) First Storage Element Address (LSB)							
07								
08	(MSB) Number of Storage Elements (LSB)							
09								
10	(MSB) First Import/Export Element Address (LSB)							
11								
12	(MSB) Number of Import/Export Elements (LSB)							
13								
14	(MSB) First Data Transfer Element Address (LSB)							
15								
16	(MSB) Number of Data Transfer Elements (LSB)							
17								
18	Reserved							
19								

For the element-specific field definitions in the following list, refer to Figure 1-5 on page 1-8, Figure 1-6 on page 1-9, and to Chapter 8.

PS (Page Savable) – Byte 00, Bit 7

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library can save this page to nonvolatile memory.

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 5 through 0

This field identifies the Element Address Assignment page. The value returned for this field is 1Dh.

Parameter Length – Byte 01

The value returned for this field is 12h (18), which indicates that there are an additional 18 bytes of element address data that follow this byte.

Medium Transport Element Address – Bytes 02 and 03

This field identifies the address of the cartridge handling mechanism (CHM). The default address is 56h (86). You can change this address with the MODE SELECT (15h) command.

Number of Medium Transport Elements – Bytes 04 and 05

This field identifies the number of cartridge handling mechanisms (CHMs) within the library. The library has only one CHM, so the value returned for this field is 1. This value cannot be changed.

First Storage Element Address – Bytes 06 and 07

This field identifies the starting address of the cartridge storage locations. The default starting address is 00h (0). You can change this address with the MODE SELECT (15h) command.

Number of Storage Elements – Bytes 08 and 09

This field identifies the maximum number of cartridge storage locations within the library, including data cartridge storage locations and the fixed cartridge slot. The number of cartridge storage locations is 0Bh (11) for the EXB-210 and 15h (21) for the EXB-220. This value cannot be changed.

First Import/Export Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

The library does not have an import/export element, so the value returned for this field is 0. This value cannot be changed.

Number of Import/Export Elements – Bytes 12 and 13

The library does not have an import/export element, so the value returned for this field is 0. This value cannot be changed.

First Data Transfer Element Address – Bytes 14 and 15

The default value returned for this field is 52h (82). You can change this address with the MODE SELECT (15h) command.

Number of Data Transfer Elements – Bytes 16 and 17

The value returned for this field is 0, 1, or 2. This value identifies the number of tape drives installed. This value cannot be changed.

Transport Geometry Descriptor Page (Page Code 1Eh)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	PS	RSVD	Page Code (1Eh)					
01	Parameter Length (02h)							
02	Reserved							Rotate
03	Member Number in Transport Element Set							

PS (Page Savable) – Byte 00, Bit 7

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library cannot save this page to nonvolatile memory.

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 5 through 0

This field identifies the Transport Geometry Descriptor page. The value returned for this field is 1Eh.

Parameter Length – Byte 01

This field indicates the number of additional bytes of transport geometry descriptor data that follow the header. Each descriptor consists of two bytes of information. The library has only one transport mechanism (CHM), so the value returned for this field is 02h.

Rotate – Byte 02, Bit 0

This field identifies the ability of the transport mechanism to handle two-sided media. The library uses only one-sided media, so the value returned for this field is 0.

Member Number in Transport Element Set – Byte 03

This field identifies the specific transport element in the system to apply this descriptor to. The library has only one transport element, so the value returned for this field is 0.

Device Capabilities Page (Page Code 1Fh)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	PS	RSVD	Page Code (1Fh)					
01	Parameter Length (12h)							
02	Reserved				DT 1	I/E 0	ST 1	MT 1
03	Reserved							
04	Reserved				MT→DT 1	MT→I/E 0	MT→ST 1	MT→MT 0
05	Reserved				ST→DT 1	ST→I/E 0	ST→ST 1	ST→MT 1
06	Reserved				I/E→DT 0	I/E→I/E 0	I/E→ST 0	I/E→MT 0
07	Reserved				DT→DT 1	DT→I/E 0	DT→ST 1	DT→MT 1
08 : 19	Reserved							

DT – Data transfer element (tape drive)

I/E – Import/export element (the library does not have an import/export element)

MT – Media transport element (CHM)

ST – Storage element (cartridge location)

0 – move not supported

1 – move supported

PS (Page Savable) – Byte 00, Bit 7

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library cannot save this page to nonvolatile memory.

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 5 through 0

This field identifies the page code for the Device Capabilities page. The value returned for this field is 1Fh.

Parameter Length – Byte 01

The Parameter Length is 12h (18), which indicates that there are an additional 18 bytes of device capabilities data that follow this byte.

DT (Data Transfer Element/Tape Drive) – Byte 02, Bit 3

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the tape drives can store cartridges. (A cartridge in a tape drive, either loaded or ejected, is considered “stored” in the tape drive.)

I/E (Import/Export Element) – Byte 02, Bit 2

The library does not have an import/export element, so the value returned for this field is 0.

ST (Storage Element) – Byte 02, Bit 1

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the cartridge storage locations can store cartridges.

MT (Media Transport) – Byte 02, Bit 0

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the CHM can store cartridges.

MT → DT – Byte 04, Bit 3

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the CHM and the destination is a tape drive.

MT → I/E – Byte 04, Bit 2

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the CHM and the destination is the import/export element (the library does not have an import/export element).

MT → ST – Byte 04, Bit 1

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the CHM and the destination is a cartridge storage location.

MT → MT – Byte 04, Bit 0

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the CHM and the destination is the CHM.

ST → DT – Byte 05, Bit 3

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a cartridge storage location and the destination is a tape drive.

ST → I/E – Byte 05, Bit 2

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a cartridge storage location and the destination is the import/export element (the library does not have an import/export element).

ST → ST – Byte 05, Bit 1

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a cartridge storage location and the destination is a cartridge storage location.

ST → MT – Byte 05, Bit 0

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a cartridge storage location and the destination is the CHM.

I/E → DT – Byte 06, Bit 3

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the import/export element and the destination is a tape drive (the library does not have an import/export element).

I/E → I/E – Byte 06, Bit 2

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the import/export element and the destination is the import/export element (the library does not have an import/export element).

I/E → ST – Byte 06, Bit 1

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the import/export element and the destination is a cartridge storage location (the library does not have an import/export element).

I/E → MT – Byte 06, Bit 0

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is the import/export element and the destination is the CHM (the library does not have an import/export element).

DT → DT – Byte 07, Bit 3

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a tape drive and the destination is a tape drive.

DT → I/E – Byte 07, Bit 2

The value returned for this field is 0, which indicates that the library does not support the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a tape drive and the destination is the import/export element (the library does not have an import/export element).

DT → ST – Byte 07, Bit 1

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a tape drive and the destination is a cartridge storage location.

DT → MT – Byte 07, Bit 0

The value returned for this field is 1, which indicates that the library supports the MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command when the source is a tape drive and the destination is the CHM.

LCD Mode Page (Page Code 22h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	PS	RSVD	Page Code (22h)					
01	Parameter Length (52h)							
02	RSVD	LCD Security	Reserved		Write Line 1	Write Line 2	Write Line 3	Write Line 4
03	Reserved							
04 : 23	Display Line 1							
24 : 43	Display Line 2							
44 : 63	Display Line 3							
64 : 83	Display Line 4							

PS – Byte 00, Bit 07 (Page Savable)

This field specifies that the library is capable of saving this page to nonvolatile memory. The value returned for this field is 1.

Parameter Length – Byte 01

The Page Length is 52h (82) which indicates that there are an additional 82 bytes of data that follow this byte.

LCD Security – Byte 02, Bit 6

This bit indicates whether LCD security is enabled. When LCD security is enabled, access to certain LCD menu options through the front panel is prevented (see page 8-9). The values for this bit are as follows:

- 0 – LCD security is not enabled (factory default)
- 1 – LCD security is enabled

Write Line 1 – Byte 02, Bit 3

This field indicates the text used for Line 1 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Library default text. For the EXB-210, this line is “ Exabyte EXB-210 ”.
- 1 – Text you specified in bytes 4 through 23 of the LCD Mode page from the last MODE SELECT command.

The factory default is 0. You can change this field with the MODE SELECT command.

Write Line 2 – Byte 02, Bit 2

This field indicates the text used for Line 2 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Default text, for example, “VER x.yy.zz hh:mm:ss”, where x.yy.zz is the firmware version stored in flash memory and hh:mm:ss is the current time in hours, minutes, and seconds.
- 1 – Text you specified in bytes 24 through 43 of the LCD Mode page from the last MODE SELECT command.

The factory default is 0. You can change this field with the MODE SELECT command.

Write Line 3 – Byte 02, Bit 1

This field indicates the text used for Line 3 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Default text, for example, a high-level status message
- 1 – Text you specified in bytes 44 through 63 of the LCD Mode page from the last MODE SELECT command.

The factory default is 0. You can change this field with the MODE SELECT command.

Write Line 4 – Byte 02, Bit 0

This field indicates the text used for Line 4 of the display, as follows:

- 0 – Default text, for example, a low-level status message
- 1 – Text you specified in bytes 64 through 83 of the LCD Mode page from the last MODE SELECT command.

The factory default is 0. You can change this field with the MODE SELECT command.

Display Line 1 – Bytes 04 through 23

This field specifies the text that the library displays on Line 1 of the LCD when the Write Line 1 field is set to 1.

Display Line 2 – Bytes 24 through 43

This field specifies the text that the library displays on Line 2 of the LCD when the Write Line 2 field is set to 1.

Display Line 3 – Bytes 44 through 63

This field specifies the text that the library displays on Line 3 of the LCD when the Write Line 3 field is set to 1.

Display Line 4 – Bytes 64 through 83

This field specifies the text that the library displays on Line 4 of the LCD when the Write Line 4 field is set to 1.

Note: For the Display Line fields, refer to Appendix C for the LCD character set.

Parity Page (Page Code 00h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	PS	RSVD	Page Code (00h)					
01	Parameter Length (02h)							
02	Reserved		Parity	Reserved				
03	Maximum Parity Retries							

PS (Page Savable) – Byte 00, Bit 7

This field specifies that the library is capable of saving this page to nonvolatile memory. The value returned for this field is 1.

Page Code – Byte 00, Bits 5 through 0

This field identifies the Parity page. The value returned for this field is 00h.

Parameter Length – Byte 01

The Page Length is 02h, which indicates that there are an additional 2 bytes of data that follow this byte.

Parity – Byte 02, Bit 5

This field indicates whether SCSI bus parity checking is enabled or disabled with the MODE SELECT (15h) parameters, as follows:

- 0 – SCSI bus parity checking disabled
- 1 – SCSI bus parity checking enabled

The factory default is 1. You can change this field with the MODE SELECT command.

Note: Parity checking can also be set with the LCD parity option. See Chapter 2 for more information.

Maximum Parity Retries – Byte 03

This field indicates the maximum number of times the library will retry the message out phase, command out phase, or data out phase when a parity error occurs. The valid values for this field are 0 through 255, where 0 means that no retries are performed. The factory default value for this field is 1. You can change this field with the MODE SELECT command.

9.4 How the Library Executes This Command

This section describes how the library executes the MODE SENSE command. The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 9-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB.

Table 9-1 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

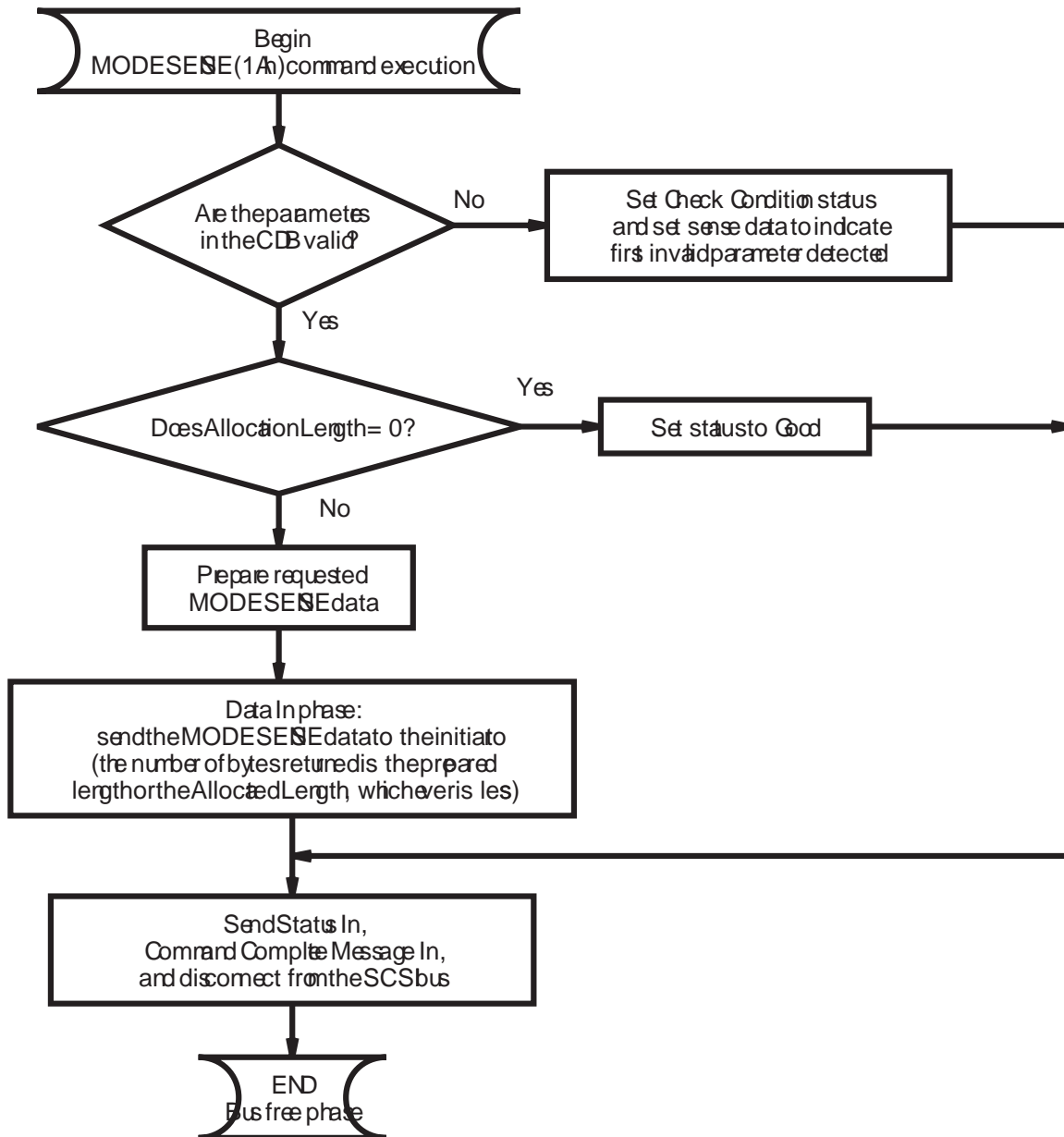


Figure 9-1 MODE SENSE command execution

9.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the MODE SENSE command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when the library is processing a command for a different initiator or when the library is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when the library is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 9-1 for sense data).

Table 9-1 Invalid parameters in the MODE SENSE CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	24h	00	1	1	1	3h	0001h	Invalid value in DBD field.
5h	24h	00	1	1	1	5h	0002h	Invalid Page Code.

Notes

10 MOVE MEDIUM (A5h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02	Transport Element Address (LSB)							
03								
04	Source Address (LSB)							
05								
06	Destination Address (LSB)							
07								
08	Reserved							
09								
10	Reserved							Invert
11	0	0	Reserved				0	0

10.1 About This Command

The MOVE MEDIUM command requests that the CHM move a cartridge from a source element location (address) to a destination element location (address). If the destination is a tape drive, the library will insert the cartridge.

For the valid source element and destination element combinations for the MOVE MEDIUM command, refer to the Device Capabilities page of the MODE SENSE data (see page 9-7).

Notes:

- If you use this command to move a cartridge from a tape drive and the cartridge is still inside the tape drive, the library waits 5 seconds and retries the move operation. If the cartridge is still in the tape drive at that point, the library returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request. The ASC is 3Bh and the ASCQ is 90h, as described in Table 10-5. This 5-second retry allows for the slight delay that can occur after a tape drive indicates that it has unloaded the tape but before the cartridge is fully ejected.
- If you issue this command with the Source Address and Destination Address both set to the same tape drive, the CHM pushes the cartridge into the tape drive. This allows an initiator to retry a move operation from a tape drive that has failed because the cartridge was not ejected far enough to pick. By reinserting the cartridge into the tape drive, the initiator can re-eject the cartridge and retry the move operation.

10.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Transport Element Address – Bytes 02 and 03

This field is checked for the value set by the MODE SELECT (15h) command. It should contain 0 or the element address of the CHM.

Source Address – Bytes 04 and 05

This field specifies the element address from which the cartridge is to be taken. This can be a storage location, the CHM, or a tape drive.

Destination Address – Byte 06 and 07

This field specifies the element address where the cartridge is to be placed. This can be a storage location, tape drive, or the CHM.

Invert – Byte 10, Bit 0

The library does not support the Invert function. The valid value for this field is 0.

10.3 Effects on the Cartridge Inventory

The cartridge inventory is updated after the CHM completes a cartridge move operation, whether or not the cartridge move was successful. The various outcomes of a requested move operation are explained below:

- A cartridge move operation was requested and completed successfully (the source address contained a cartridge, the destination address was empty, and the cartridge was moved). See Table 10-1 for information about how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Table 10-1 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a successful move operation

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following for...	
	...the source address	...the destination address
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	copied from source
Label Valid	0	copied from source
Label Error	0	copied from source
Label Scan Retries	0	copied from source
Send Volume Match	0	copied from source
Tape Drive Accessible	1	0
Pick Retries	updated if retried	no change
Put Retries	no change	updated if retried
Total Puts	no change	incremented
Source Address	255	source element index

- A cartridge move operation is requested and the CHM finds the source address empty. The library does not attempt to move a cartridge if the cartridge inventory indicates that the source is empty (the Occupied flag is set to 0 and Occupied Valid flag is set to 1). See Table 10-2 for information about how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Table 10-2 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a move operation when the source is empty

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following for...	
	...the source address	...the destination address
Occupied	0	no change
Occupied Valid	1	no change
Label	blanks	no change
Label Valid	0	no change
Label Error	0	no change
Label Scan Retries	0	no change
Send Volume Match	0	no change
Tape Drive Accessible	no change	no change
Pick Retries	no change	no change
Put Retries	no change	no change
Total Puts	no change	no change
Source Address	255	no change

- A cartridge move operation is requested and the CHM finds that the destination address contains a cartridge. Table 10-3 describes how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Note: The library does not perform the move operation if the cartridge inventory indicates that the destination is occupied and the Occupied Valid flag is set to 1.

Table 10-3 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a move operation when the destination is full

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following for...	
	...the source address	...the destination address
Occupied	1	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	no change	no change
Label Valid	no change	no change
Label Error	no change	no change
Label Scan Retries	no change	no change
Send Volume Match	no change	no change
Tape Drive Accessible	1	no change
Pick Retries	updated if retried	no change
Put Retries	updated if retried	no change
Total Puts	incremented	no change
Source Address	no change	no change

- A cartridge move operation was requested with the same source and destination address. This type of operation is requested when the occupied status of a location is questionable (the Occupied Valid flag is set to 0) and when the cartridge needs to be loaded into the tape drive again. The library does not attempt to move a cartridge if the Occupied Valid flag is set to 1 for the source and destination address and the location is a storage location. Table 10-4 describes how the cartridge inventory is updated.

Table 10-4 Effect on the cartridge inventory of a move operation when the source and destination are the same

This cartridge inventory field...	...is changed to the following when...	
	...the location is empty	...the location is full
Occupied	0	1
Occupied Valid	1	1
Label	blanks	no change
Label Valid	0	no change
Label Error	0	no change
Label Scan Retries	0	no change
Send Volume Match	0	no change
Tape Drive Accessible	no change	0
Pick Retries	no change	updated if retried
Put Retries	no change	updated if retried
Total Puts	no change	incremented
Source Address	255	element index

10.4 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed. Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete list of conditions that the library checks while it is receiving and after it has received the CDB from the initiator.

If a cartridge move operation is requested, the library must validate the source and destination for the move, as shown in Figure 10-1 and Figure 10-2. After the library validates the source and destination for the move, the library executes the move operation, as shown in Figure 10-3.

As shown in Figure 10-3, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 10-5 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB and also shows the sense data for various move errors.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

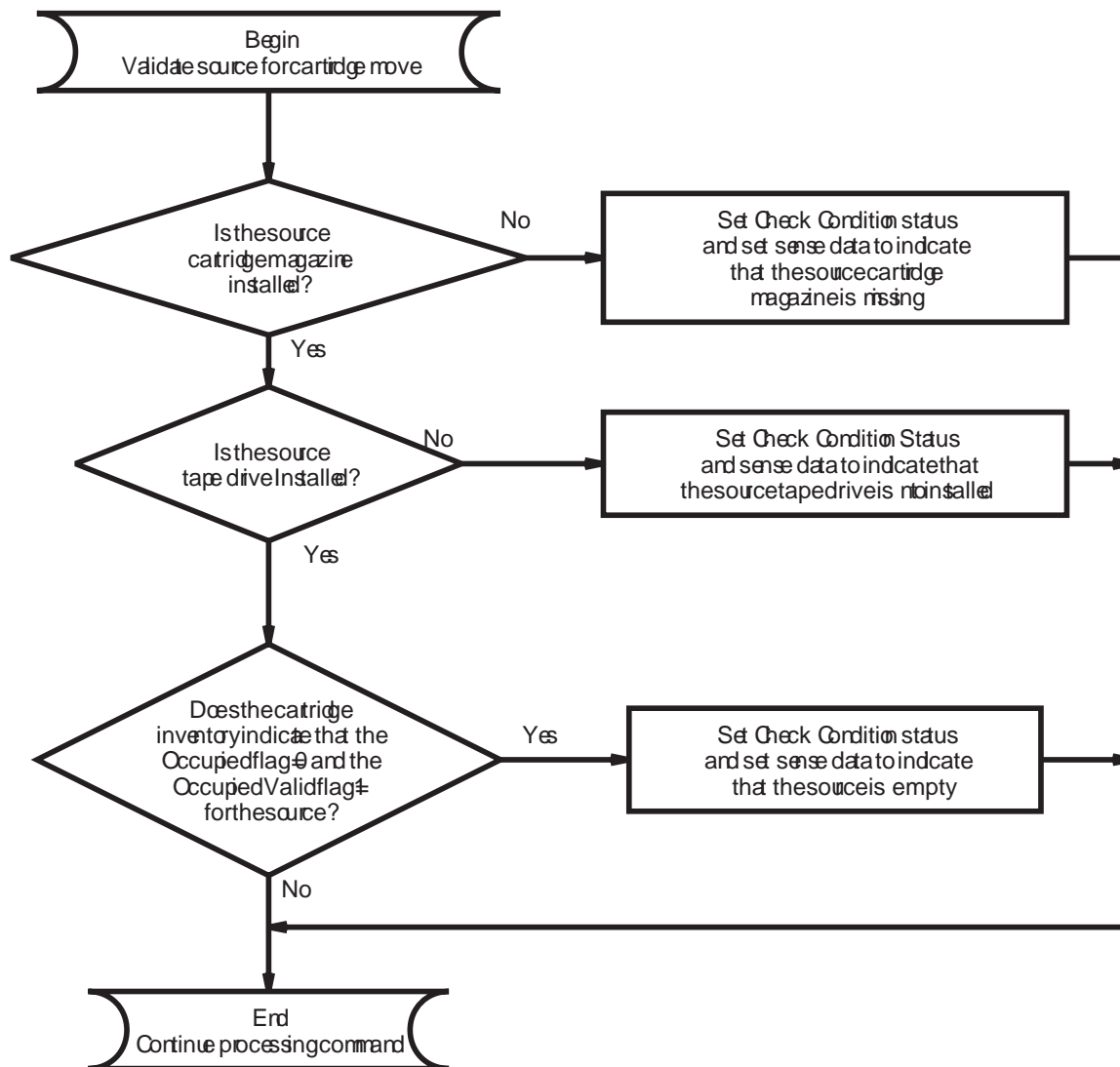


Figure 10-1 MOVE MEDIUM command execution — source validation

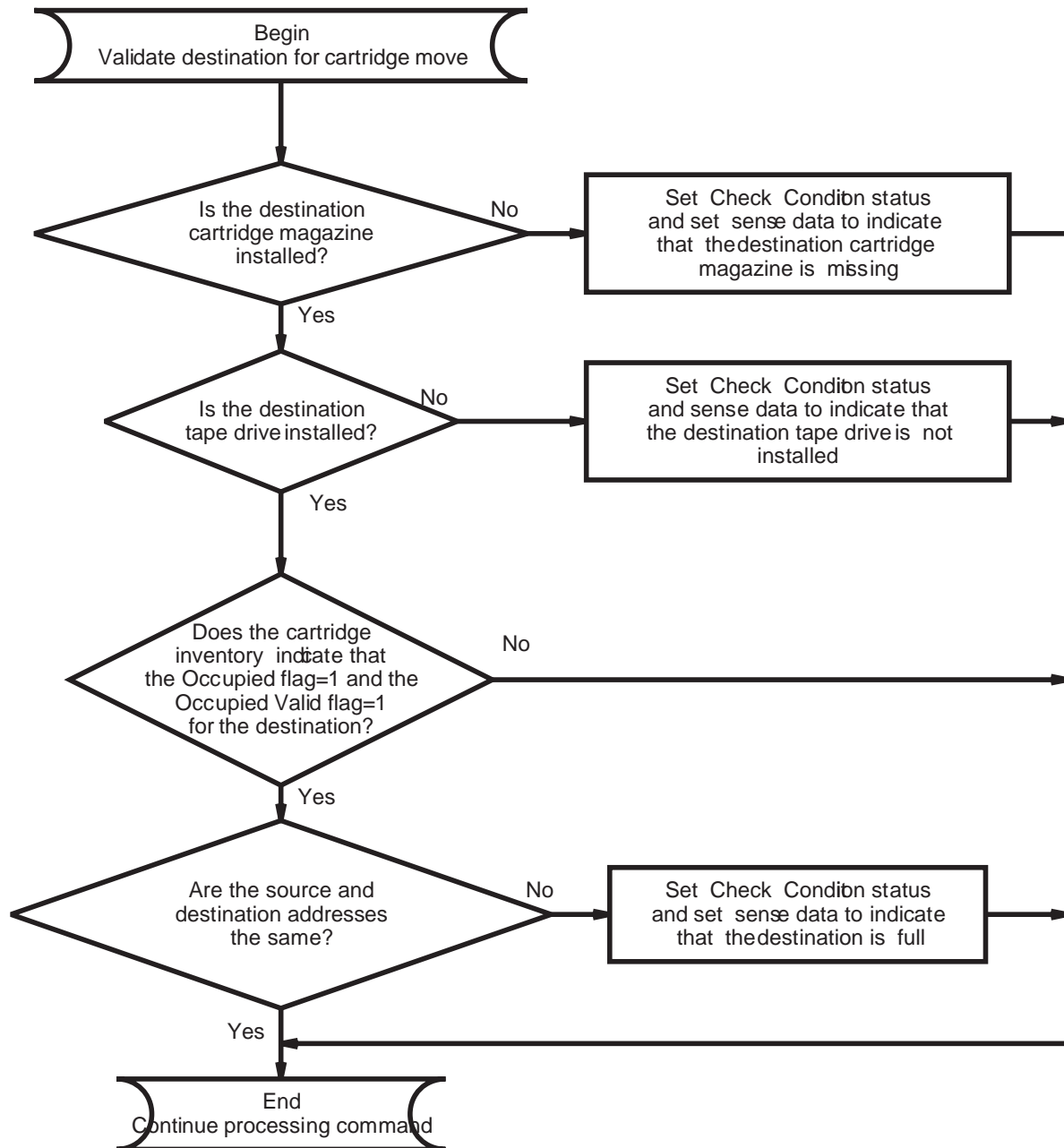


Figure 10-2 MOVE MEDIUM command execution — destination validation

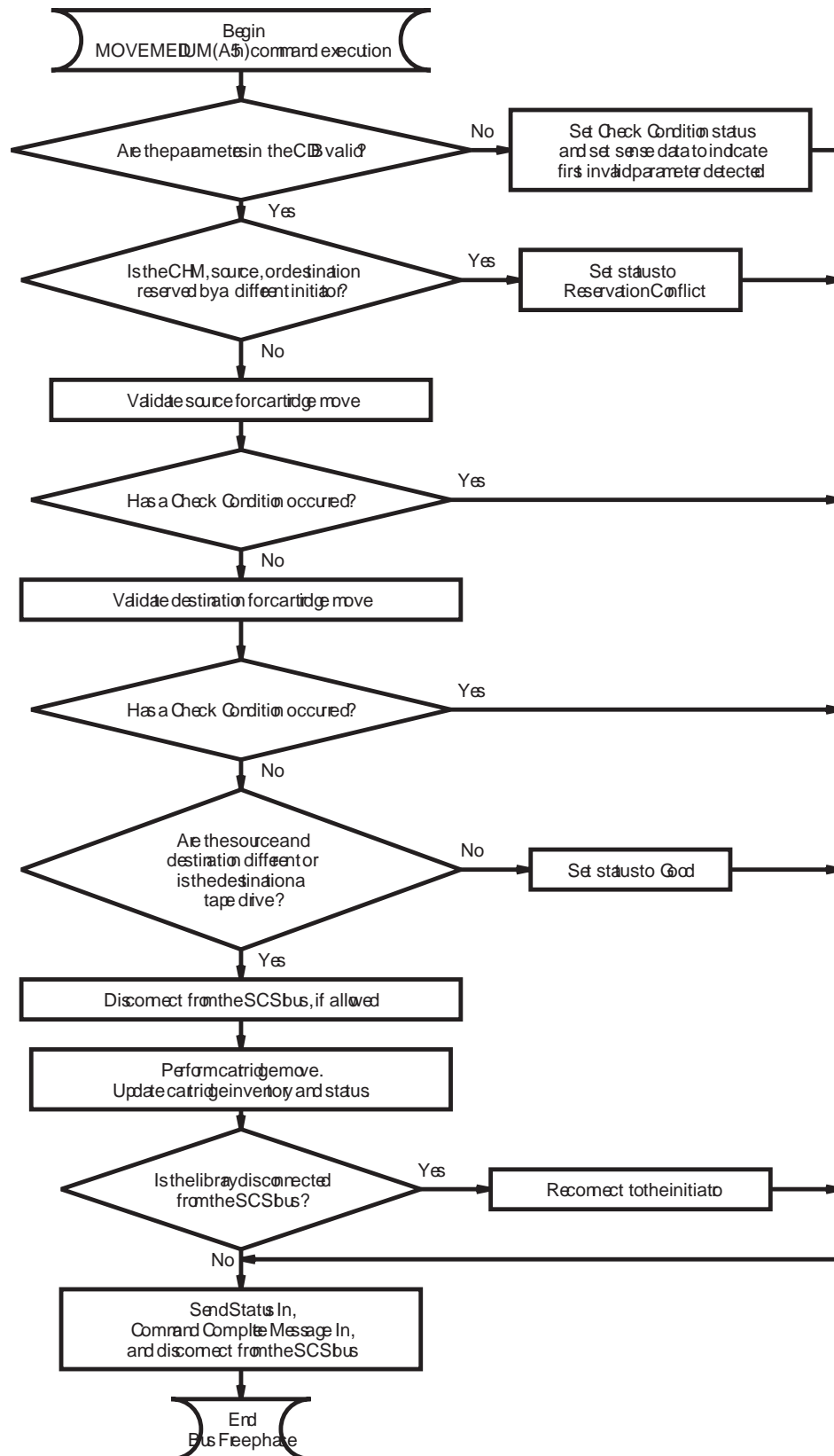


Figure 10-3 MOVE MEDIUM command execution — cartridge move

10.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the MOVE MEDIUM command.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator or when an element involved in a requested move operation is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- The library has experienced an unrecoverable hardware error.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- The library is not ready because the door is open or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 10-5 for sense data).
- The information in the cartridge inventory indicates that the requested cartridge move operation cannot be performed.

- After the library attempts to move a cartridge, it finds that the source is empty or the destination is occupied.
- The library encounters a problem while trying to move a cartridge. For example: it encounters a place (put) error while moving a cartridge.

Table 10-5 Invalid parameters in the MOVE MEDIUM CDB and move errors

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	0	0002h	Invalid transport element address.
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	0	0004h	Invalid source element address.
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	0	0006h	Invalid destination element address.
5h	24h	00	1	1	1	0	000Ah	Invalid Invert field.
5h	3Bh	0Dh	0	0	0	0	0	Destination element occupied.
5h	3Bh	0Eh	0	0	0	0	0	Source element empty.
5h	3Bh	87h	0	0	0	0	0	Cartridge stuck in tape drive.
5h	3Bh	90h	0	0	0	0	0	Source cartridge is loaded inside the tape drive and is not accessible.
5h	80h	03h	0	0	0	0	0	Source magazine not installed.
5h	80h	04h	0	0	0	0	0	Destination magazine not installed.
5h	80h	05h	0	0	0	0	0	Source tape drive not installed.
5h	80h	06h	0	0	0	0	0	Destination tape drive not installed.

11 POSITION TO ELEMENT (2Bh)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02	(MSB) Transport Element Address (LSB)							
03								
04	(MSB) Destination Element Address (LSB)							
05								
06	Reserved							
07								
08	Reserved							Invert
09	0	0	Reserved				0	0

11.1 About This Command

The POSITION TO ELEMENT command allows you to request that the cartridge handling mechanism (CHM) be positioned to a specific element location (address).

The CHM is positioned so that no additional movement on the long axis is required to access the cartridge at that location for a MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command. Use this command with an application that may require a pause before issuing a MOVE MEDIUM command. The time that you save with the POSITION TO ELEMENT command is valuable if you would normally have to wait for the CHM to move to the element when you issue the MOVE MEDIUM command.

11.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Transport Element Address – Bytes 02 and 03

This field is checked for the value set by the MODE SELECT (15h) command. It should contain 0 or the element address of the CHM.

Destination Element Address – Bytes 04 and 05

This field allows you to specify the address of the element where the CHM is to be positioned.

Note: Use the CHM as the destination address if you want to access a tape drive or data cartridge magazine. If the destination address is the CHM, the library positions the CHM in the park position (located to the right of the cartridge magazine in the rack-mount model or at the top in the standalone model).

Invert – Byte 08, Bit 0

The library does not support the Invert function, so you must specify a value of 0 for this bit.

11.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 11-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the POSITION TO ELEMENT command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 11-1 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB. It also shows the sense data for various position errors.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

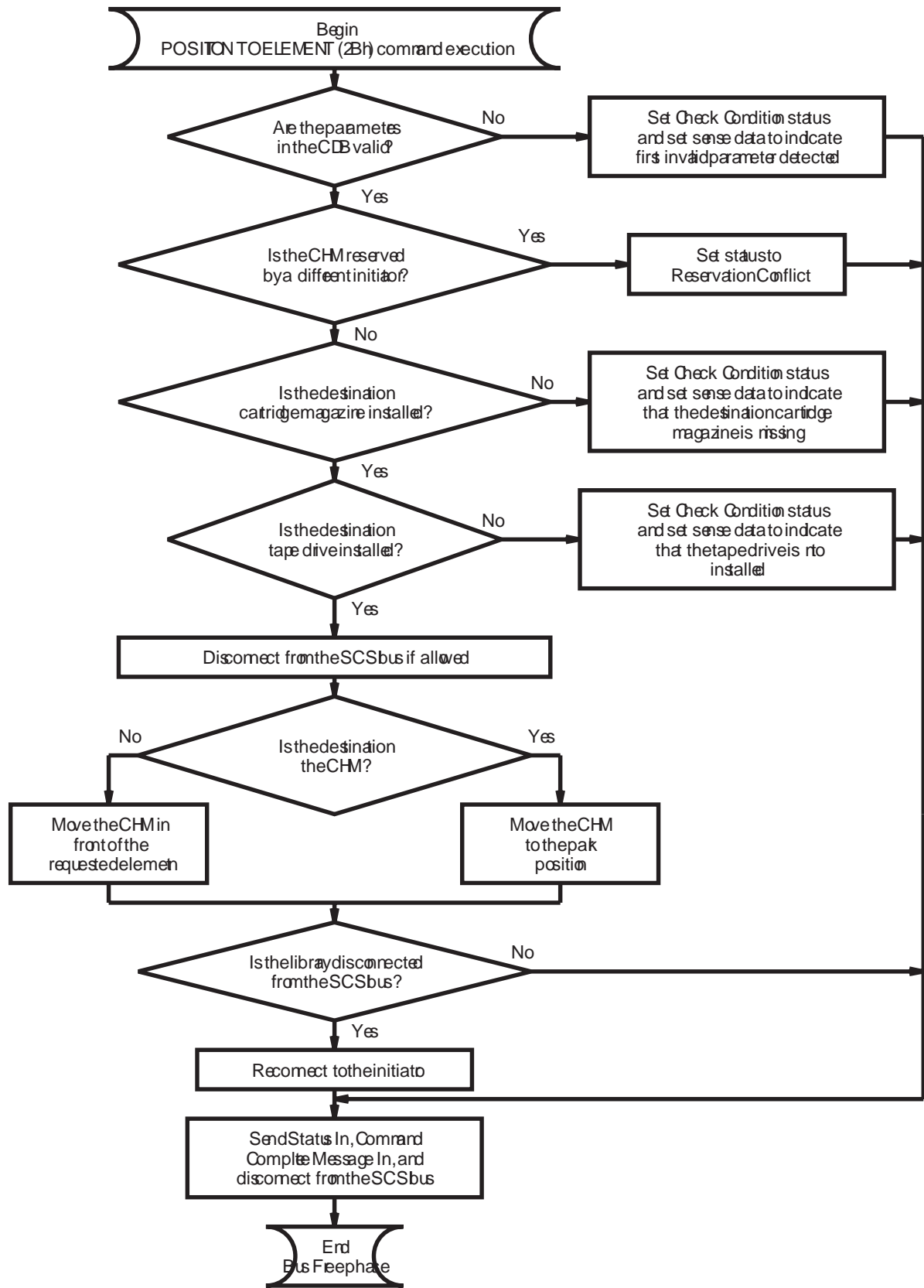


Figure 11-1 POSITION TO ELEMENT command execution

11.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the POSITION TO ELEMENT command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it or the CHM is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- The library has experienced an unrecoverable hardware error.
- The library is not ready because the door is open or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.
- The destination is a storage location or tape drive and the data cartridge magazine or tape drive is not installed.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.

- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 11-1 for sense data).
- The library encounters a problem during the position operation.

Table 11-1 Invalid parameters in POSITION TO ELEMENT CDB and position errors

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	—	0002h	Invalid transport element address.
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	—	0004h	Invalid destination element address.
5h	21h	01h	1	1	1	0	0008h	Invalid Invert field.
5h	80h	04h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Destination cartridge magazine is not installed.
5h	80h	06h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Destination tape drive is not installed.

Notes

12 PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (1Eh)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02	Reserved							
03								
04	Reserved							Prevent
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

12.1 About This Command

The PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command requests that the library enable or disable access to the cartridge storage area. If you use this command to disable access to the cartridge storage area, the library activates the front door interlock mechanism and prevents it from being released even when the door is unlocked using the key.

If at least one initiator has issued this command to prevent cartridge access, no other initiator can perform this function even if that initiator has reserved the entire library.

12.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Prevent – Byte 04, Bit 00

The valid values for this field are as follows:

- 0 – Allow removal of cartridges through the front door.
- 1 – Prevent removal of cartridges through the front door.

When the Prevent bit is set to 1, the library prevents removal of cartridges until one of the following occurs:

- All initiators that have issued PREVENT MEDIUM REMOVAL commands issue ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL commands with the Prevent bit set to 0.
- The SCSI bus is reset, which automatically resets the library.
- The library is powered off and back on again or reset (see Section 2.3 on page 2-4).

12.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed. Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete list of conditions that the library checks while it is receiving and after it has received the CDB from the initiator.

Figure 12-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command through the bus free phase.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

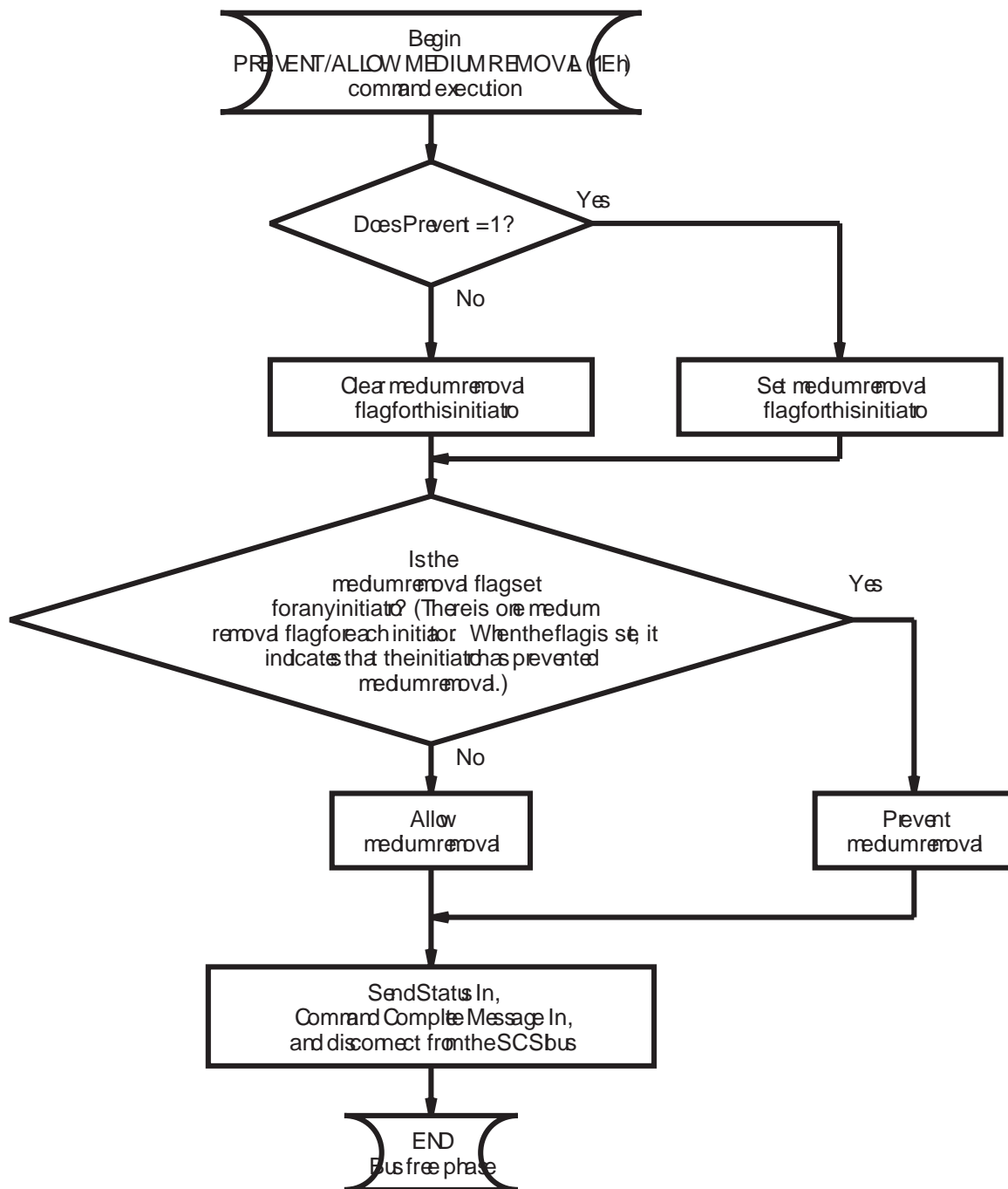


Figure 12-1 PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command execution

12.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator and a request is made to prevent medium removal. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status when:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.

13 READ ELEMENT STATUS

(B8h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0
01	Logical Unit Number			VolTag	Element Type Code			
02	(MSB) Starting Element Address							
03								
04	(MSB) Number of Elements (LSB)							
05								
06	Reserved							
07	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
08								
09								
10	Reserved							
11	S/N Req	0	Reserved				0	0

13.1 About This Command

The READ ELEMENT STATUS command requests that the library return the status of its elements. This command returns the data created as a result of the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) or INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) command. For more information about the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS commands, see Chapters 4 and 5.

► **Important** If your library does not have a bar code scanner, you can ignore the comments about bar code labels in this chapter.

13.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

VolTag – Byte 01, Bit 4

This bit indicates whether you want the library to return volume tag (bar code label) information in response to this command, as follows:

- 0 – Do not return volume tag (bar code label) information
- 1 – Return volume tag (bar code label) information

Element Type Code – Byte 01, Bits 3 through 0

This field specifies the particular element types you want the library to report on. The library supports the following Element Type Codes:

- 0h – All element types
- 1h – Medium Transport Element (CHM)
- 2h – Storage Element (cartridge slots)
- 4h – Data Transfer Element (tape drives)

For an Element Type Code of 0h, the element types are reported in element address order, beginning with the Starting Element Address.

Starting Element Address – Bytes 02 and 03

This field indicates the element address at which to start the transfer of data. Only elements with addresses greater than or equal to the starting address are reported. Element descriptor blocks are not generated for undefined element addresses.

Note: The Starting Element Address must be a valid address for the library, but does not have to be an address of the type requested in the Element Type Code. The library only returns element descriptors for the elements of the requested element type within the range defined by the Starting Element Address and Number of Elements fields.

Number of Elements – Bytes 04 and 05

This field specifies the maximum number of element descriptors to be returned. This is an actual number of element descriptors to be returned, not an element address range.

The library returns element descriptors of the requested element type starting with the first element address equal to or greater than the value in the Starting Element Address field.

Allocation Length – Bytes 07 through 09

This field specifies the length in bytes of the space that you are allocating for returned element descriptors. Only complete element descriptors are returned. The library returns element descriptors until *one* of the following conditions is met:

- All available element descriptors have been returned.
- The number of element descriptors specified in the Number of Elements field has been returned.
- The number of bytes of complete element descriptors specified in the Allocation Length field has been returned.
- The remaining allocation length is smaller than the next complete element descriptor to be returned.

S/N Request – Byte 11, Bit 7

This bit indicates whether the library appends the ten-byte tape drive serial number to the standard data transfer element descriptor, as follows:

- 0 – Do not append the tape drive serial number.
- 1 – Append the tape drive serial number.

13.3 What the Library Returns

Element Status Data

This header is returned once for each READ ELEMENT STATUS command received by the library.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) First Element Address Reported (LSB)							
01								
02	(MSB) Number of Elements Reported (LSB)							
03								
04	Reserved							
05	(MSB) Byte Count of Report Available (LSB)							
06								
07								

First Element Address Reported – Bytes 00 and 01

This field indicates the smallest element address found that meets the CDB requirements.

Number of Elements Reported – Bytes 02 and 03

This field indicates the total number of elements that meet the CDB requirements. The library returns element descriptors for these elements if you specified a sufficient Allocation Length.

Byte Count of Report Available – Bytes 05 through 07

This field indicates the total number of bytes of element status page data available that meet the CDB requirements. This value is not adjusted to match the value that you specified for the Allocation Length field in the CDB.

Element Status Page

The library returns one Element Status page for each group of element descriptors of the same type (that is, it returns one page for each of the following: CHM, cartridge storage locations, tape drives). The Element Status Page is returned only if there is at least one complete Element Descriptor.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Element Type Code							
01	PVolTag	AVolTag	Reserved					
02	(MSB) <div>Element Descriptor Length</div> (LSB)							
03								
04	Reserved							
05	(MSB) <div>Byte Count of Descriptor Data Available</div> (LSB)							
06								
07								

Element Type Code – Byte 00

This field indicates the specific element type (see page 13-2) being reported by the element descriptor.

PVolTag – Byte 01, Bit 7

This field indicates if primary volume tag (bar code label) information is present, as follows:

- 0 – Volume tag bytes are omitted from the element descriptors
- 1 – Volume tag information is present

AVolTag – Byte 01, Bit 6

The library does not support alternate volume tags. The value reported for this field is 0.

Element Descriptor Length – Bytes 02 and 03

This field indicates the total number of bytes contained in a single element descriptor. When the VolTag bit (byte 01, bit 4 of the CDB) is set to 1 (report bar code label information), this value is 52 bytes. When the VolTag bit is 0 (do not report bar code label information), this value is 16 bytes.

When S/N Req (byte 11, bit 7 of the CDB) is set to 1 (report the tape drive serial number) and the descriptor being returned is for the data transfer element, the length is either 62 bytes (if the VolTag bit is 1) or 26 bytes (if the VolTag bit is 0).

Byte Count of Descriptor Data Available – Bytes 05 through 07

This field indicates the total number of bytes of element descriptor data available for the elements of this element type that meet the CDB requirements. This value is the Element Descriptor Length multiplied by the number of element descriptors. This value is not adjusted to match the value that you specified in the Allocation Length field of the CDB.

Element Descriptors

The following sections contain the field definitions for the three types of element descriptors for the library:

- **Medium transport element:** The cartridge handling mechanism (CHM)
- **Storage elements:** Each slot in the data cartridge magazine and the fixed cartridge slot
- **Data transfer elements:** The tape drives

Each element descriptor includes the element address and status flags. Each element descriptor can also contain sense code information as well as other information, depending on the element type.

Notes:

- The element descriptors for the elements are very similar, with the exception of a few of the fields. Note the differences in bytes 02, 06, and 07 for the element descriptors.
- The library does not support alternate volume tags. This information is not included in any of the element descriptors.

Medium Transport Element Descriptor

The medium transport element is the cartridge handling mechanism (CHM). The library contains one CHM.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) Element Address (LSB)							
01								
02	Reserved					Except	RSVD	Full
03	Reserved							
04	Additional Sense Code							
05	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
06	Reserved							
07								
08								
09	SValid	Invert	Reserved					
10	(MSB) Source Storage Element Address (LSB)							
11								
12 ⋮ 47	Primary Volume Tag Information (field omitted if PVolTag = 0)							
48 ⋮ 51	Reserved (field moved up if Primary Volume Tag Information field is omitted)							

Element Address – Bytes 00 and 01

This field contains the element address of the medium transport element (CHM).

Except – Byte 02, Bit 2

The exception field indicates the current state of the CHM, as follows:

- 0 – The CHM is in a normal state.
- 1 – The CHM is in an abnormal state and the Additional Sense Code and the Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields contain information regarding the abnormal state.

Full – Byte 02, Bit 0

This field indicates if the CHM contains a cartridge. The possible values for this field are as follows:

- 0 – The CHM does not contain a cartridge.
- 1 – The CHM contains a cartridge.

Additional Sense Code (ASC) – Byte 04

If the CHM is in an abnormal state, this field contains the value 83h. Refer to Table 13-1 on page 13-16 for the corresponding ASCQ values and a corrective action for each abnormal state.

Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) – Byte 05

The values for this field are listed in Table 13-1 on page 13-16, along with the corrective action to take for each abnormal state.

SValid – Byte 09, Bit 7

The values for this bit indicate the following:

- 0 – The Source Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is invalid.
- 1 – The Source Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is valid.

Invert – Byte 09, Bit 6

The library uses single-sided media and does not support inverting of the media. The information reported for this field is 0.

Source Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

This field shows the address of the last element from which the cartridge was moved.

Primary Volume Tag Information – Bytes 12 through 47

When the PVolTag field (in the Element Status page described in Section 13.3 on page 13-5) is set to 1, this field contains the volume tag (bar code label) information of the cartridge in the CHM. The library supports only eight bytes of volume tag information, so only the first eight bytes reported are valid.

Storage Element Descriptor

Each of the slots in the data cartridge magazine and the fixed cartridge slot is a storage element. The EXB-210 contains 11 cartridge slots. The EXB-220 contains 21 cartridge slots.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) <div>Element Address</div> (LSB)							
01								
02	Reserved				Access	Except	RSVD	Full
03	Reserved							
04	Additional Sense Code							
05	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
06	Reserved							
07								
08								
09	SValid	Invert	Reserved					
10	(MSB) <div>Source Element Address</div> (LSB)							
11								
12 ⋮ 47	Primary Volume Tag Information (field omitted if PVolTag = 0)							
48 ⋮ 51	Reserved (field moved up if Primary Volume Tag Information field is omitted)							

Element Address – Bytes 00 and 01

This field contains the address of the cartridge storage location (cartridge slot).

Access – Byte 02, Bit 3

This bit indicates whether the CHM can access the cartridge at that location. The storage location is accessible if the cartridge magazine is installed. Accessibility is reported as follows:

- 0 – The cartridge magazine is not accessible (not installed).
- 1 – The cartridge magazine is accessible (installed).

Note: The fixed cartridge slot is always accessible.

Except – Byte 02, Bit 2

The exception bit indicates the current state of the cartridge slot, as follows:

- 0 – The cartridge slot is in a normal state.
- 1 – The cartridge slot is in an abnormal state and the Additional Sense Code and the Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields contain information regarding the abnormal state.

Full – Byte 02, Bit 0

This bit indicates whether the cartridge slot contains a cartridge, as follows:

- 0 – The slot does not contain a cartridge.
- 1 – The slot contains a cartridge.

Additional Sense Code (ASC) – Byte 04

If the Except bit is set to 1, this field contains the value 83h. Refer to Table 13-1 on page 13-16 for the corresponding ASCQ values and a corrective action for each abnormal state.

Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) – Byte 05

The values for this field are listed in Table 13-1 on page 13-16, along with the corrective action to take for each abnormal state.

SValid – Byte 09, Bit 7

The values for this bit indicate the following:

- 0 – The Source Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is invalid.
- 1 – The Source Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is valid.

Invert – Byte 09, Bit 6

The library uses single-sided media and does not support inverting of the media. The value reported for this field is 0.

Source Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

This field shows the address of the last element from which the cartridge was moved.

Primary Volume Tag Information – Bytes 12 through 47

When the PVolTag field (in the Element Status page described in Section 13.3 on page 13-5) is set to 1, this field contains the volume tag (bar code label) information of the cartridge in the storage location. The library supports only eight bytes of volume tag information, so only the first eight bytes reported are valid.

Data Transfer Element Descriptor

The data transfer element is the tape drive. The library can contain one or two tape drives.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) <div>Element Address</div> (LSB)							
01								
02	Reserved				Access	Except	RSVD	Full
03	Reserved							
04	Additional Sense Code							
05	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
06	NotBus	RSVD	IDValid	LUValid	RSVD	Logical Unit Number		
07	SCSI Bus Address							
08	Reserved							
09	SValid	Invert	Reserved					
10	(MSB) <div>Source Storage Element Address</div> (LSB)							
11								
12 ⋮ 47	Primary Volume Tag Information (omitted if PVolTag = 0)							
48 ⋮ 51	Reserved (field moved up if Volume Tag Information field is omitted)							
52 ⋮ 61	Tape Drive Serial Number (omitted if S/N Req = 0) (field moved up if Volume Tag Information field is omitted)							

Element Address – Bytes 00 and 01

This field contains the address of the data transfer element (the tape drive).

Access – Byte 02, Bit 3

This bit indicates whether the CHM can pick or place a cartridge at the tape drive location. The cartridge is accessible if it is ejected from the tape drive at that location. Accessibility is reported as follows:

- 0 – The tape drive location may not be accessible (a cartridge was last reported in the tape drive, but it is not currently ejected).
- 1 – The tape drive location is accessible (a cartridge is ejected and waiting to be picked or the tape drive is empty).

Except – Byte 02, Bit 2

The exception bit indicates the current state of the tape drive, as follows:

- 0 – The tape drive is in a normal state.
- 1 – The tape drive is in an abnormal state and the Additional Sense Code and the Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields contain information regarding the abnormal state.

Full – Byte 02, Bit 0

This bit indicates if the tape drive contains a cartridge, as follows:

- 0 – The tape drive does not contain a cartridge.
- 1 – The tape drive contains a cartridge.

Additional Sense Code (ASC) – Byte 04

If the tape drive is in an abnormal state, this field contains the value 83h. Refer to Table 13-1 on page 13-16 for the corresponding ASCQ values and a corrective action for each abnormal state.

Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) – Byte 05

The values for this field are listed in Table 13-1 on page 13-16, along with the corrective action to take for each abnormal state.

NotBus – Byte 06, Bit 7

This bit is not supported by the library. The value reported for this bit is 0.

IDValid – Byte 06, Bit 5

This bit indicates that the SCSI Bus Address field (byte 07) contains valid information as follows:

- 0 – The SCSI Bus Address field is not valid because a tape drive is not installed at this location.
- 1 – The SCSI Bus Address field is valid because a tape drive is installed at this location.

LUValid – Byte 06, Bit 4

This bit indicates that the Logical Unit Number field (byte 06, Bits 2 through 0) contains valid information as follows:

- 0 – The Logical Unit Number field is not valid because a tape drive is not installed at this location.
- 1 – The Logical Unit Number field is valid because a tape drive is installed at this location.

Logical Unit Number – Byte 06, Bits 2 through 0

The value reported for this field is 0.

SCSI Bus Address – Byte 07

The value reported for this field is the tape drive's SCSI ID.

SValid – Byte 09, Bit 7

The values for this bit indicate the following:

- 0 – The Source Storage Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is invalid.
- 1 – The Source Storage Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is valid.

Invert – Byte 09, Bit 6

The library uses single-sided media and does not support inverting the media. The value reported for this bit is 0.

Source Storage Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

This field shows the address of the last storage element from which the cartridge was moved.

Primary Volume Tag Information – Bytes 12 through 47

When the PVolTag field (in the Element Status page described in Section 13.3 on page 13-5) is set to 1, the Primary Volume Tag Information field contains the volume tag (bar code label) information of the element being reported by this element descriptor. The library supports only eight bytes of volume tag information, so only the first eight bytes reported are valid.

Note: Although the library cannot scan a cartridge once it has been loaded inside a tape drive, bar code label information can be reported if the cartridge was scanned before it was loaded inside the tape drive. The library obtains this information from the cartridge inventory. Check to see if the Except field (byte 02, bit 2) is set to 1. If it is, the label information reported may be inaccurate because the cartridge inventory is questionable. The library can scan an ejected cartridge.

Tape Drive Serial Number – Bytes 52 through 61

When the S/N Req bit (described on page 13-3) is set to 1, the Tape Drive Serial Number field contains the ten-byte tape drive serial number. This serial number is available only for tape drives capable of providing this information to the library (for example, Exabyte Mammoth tape drives).

If the installed tape drive supports the extended data, the ten-byte tape drive serial number (as received from the tape drive via the serial port) is appended to the standard data transfer element descriptor. If the library receives a READ ELEMENT STATUS command before it has queried the tape drive, this field contains UNKNOWN.

If the tape drive does not support returning its serial number to the library, a string of 10 blanks is returned.

ASC and ASCQ Values for Abnormal States

Table 13-1 contains a list of the ASC and ASCQ values that will appear in the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields of an element descriptor if the element is in an abnormal state. Table 13-1 also indicates the corrective action for each abnormal state. The Except field of an element descriptor indicates if the element is in an abnormal state.

Table 13-1 ASC and ASCQ values for abnormal element conditions

ASC	ASCQ	Description	Action
83h	00h	Label questionable	The bar code label is questionable. Issue an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) or INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) command.
83h	01h	Cannot read bar code label	Replace the label as described in <i>EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation</i> . If the error still occurs and the label is correctly placed, contact your vendor. For specifications for the bar code labels that can be used with the library, refer to the <i>Exabyte Bar Code Label Specification for 8mm Cartridges</i> .
83h	02h	Cartridge magazine not present	Install a data cartridge magazine in the library.
83h	03h	Label and full status questionable	<p>The library was powered on or the front door was opened. The cartridge inventory may have been violated. Issue an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) or INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) command.</p> <p>Note: If the element is a tape drive that is empty or contains a data cartridge (not ejected), issuing an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS or INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE will not change the questionability of the full status. You may want to issue an UNLOAD command to the tape drive to determine whether the tape drive is full or empty.</p>
83h	04h	Tape drive not installed	There is no tape drive installed. Install a tape drive or ignore the error.
83h	07h	Full status questionable	The bar code scanner is not installed, and the library was powered on or the front door was opened. The cartridge inventory may have been violated. Issue an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) or INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE (E7h) command.

ASC	ASCQ	Description	Action
83h	08h	Bar code label upside down	Replace the label as described in <i>EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation</i> . For specifications for the bar code labels that can be used with the library, refer to the <i>Exabyte Bar Code Label Specification for 8mm Cartridges</i> .
83h	09h	No bar code label	If the cartridge does not have a bar code label, place a label on the cartridge as described in <i>EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation</i> . If there is a bar code label and it is placed correctly, contact your vendor. For specifications for the bar code labels that can be used with the library, refer to the <i>Exabyte Bar Code Label Specification for 8mm Cartridges</i> .
83h	0Ah	Cannot read label because a Direct Memory Access overrun occurred	Check the placement of the bar code labels on the cartridges; if they are placed correctly, contact your vendor. Refer to <i>EXB-210 and EXB-220 Installation and Operation</i> for instructions for placing the bar code labels.

13.4 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed. Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete list of conditions that the library checks while it is receiving and after it has received the CDB from the initiator.

Figure 13-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 13-2 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

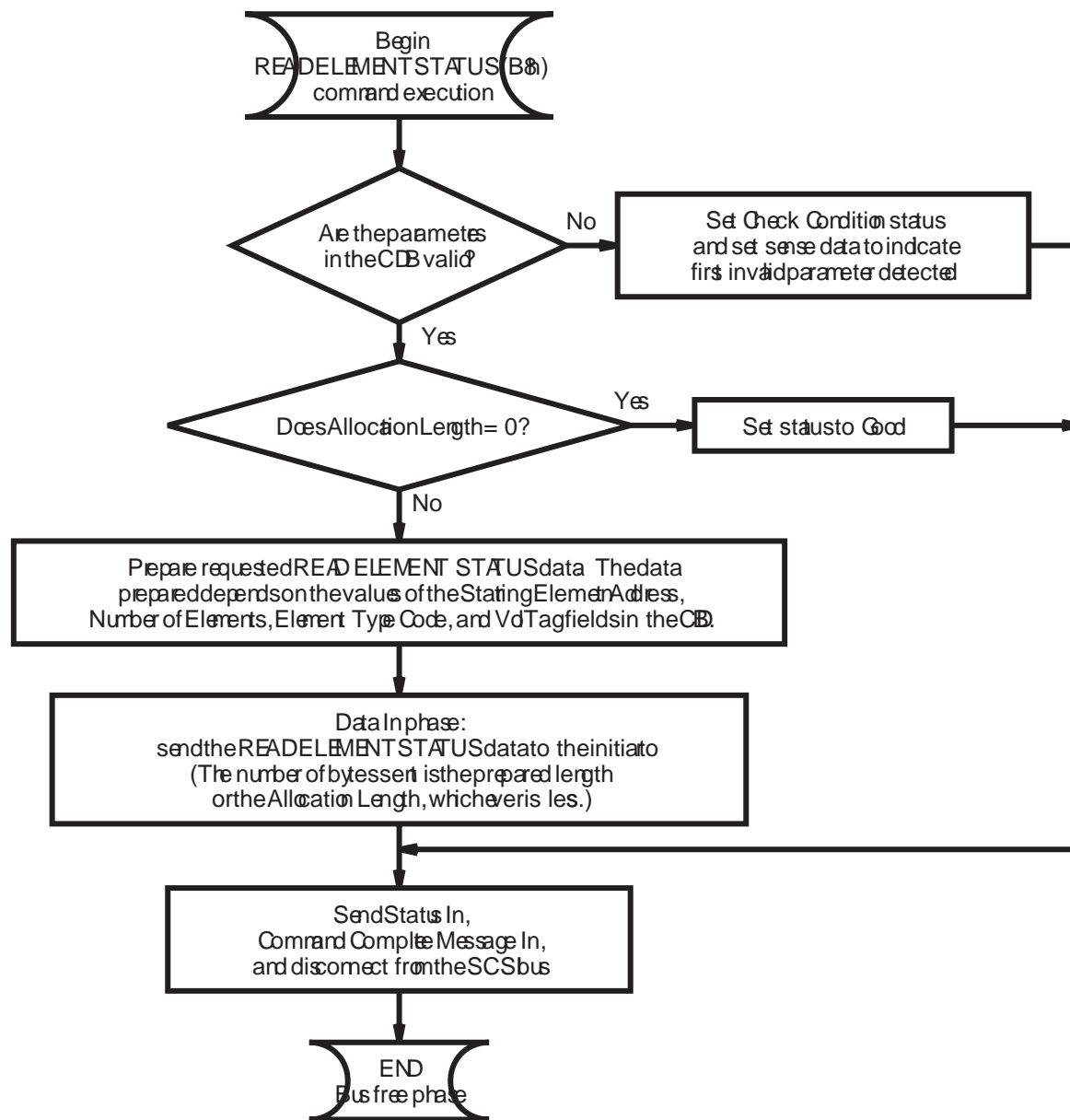


Figure 13-1 READ ELEMENT STATUS command execution

13.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the READ ELEMENT STATUS command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- The library is not ready because the door is open, or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 13-2 for sense data).

Table 13-2 Invalid parameters in the READ ELEMENT STATUS CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	0	0002h	Invalid starting element address.
5h	24h	00	1	1	1	3h	0001h	Invalid element type code.

14 READ FIRMWARE (D0h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02 : 05	Firmware Offset							
06 : 09	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
10	Reserved							
11	0	0	Reserved				0	0

14.1 About This Command

The READ FIRMWARE command is an Exabyte-unique command that allows you to transfer firmware data from the library's flash EEPROM (electronically erasable programmable read-only memory) to the host. The library processes this command when it is executing the flash EEPROM code or when it is executing the ROM boot code. It takes approximately 5½ minutes to read all of the firmware from the flash EEPROM.

14.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Firmware Offset – Bytes 02 through 05

This field specifies the offset into the library's flash EEPROM. Any number between 0 and 7FFFFh is valid.

Allocation Length – Bytes 06 through 09

This field specifies the number of bytes that will be transferred from the library's flash EEPROM, starting at the firmware offset. Specify an allocation length of 080000h (512 KB) and a firmware offset of 0 to receive all of the flash EEPROM firmware.

14.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 14-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB.

Table 14-1 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

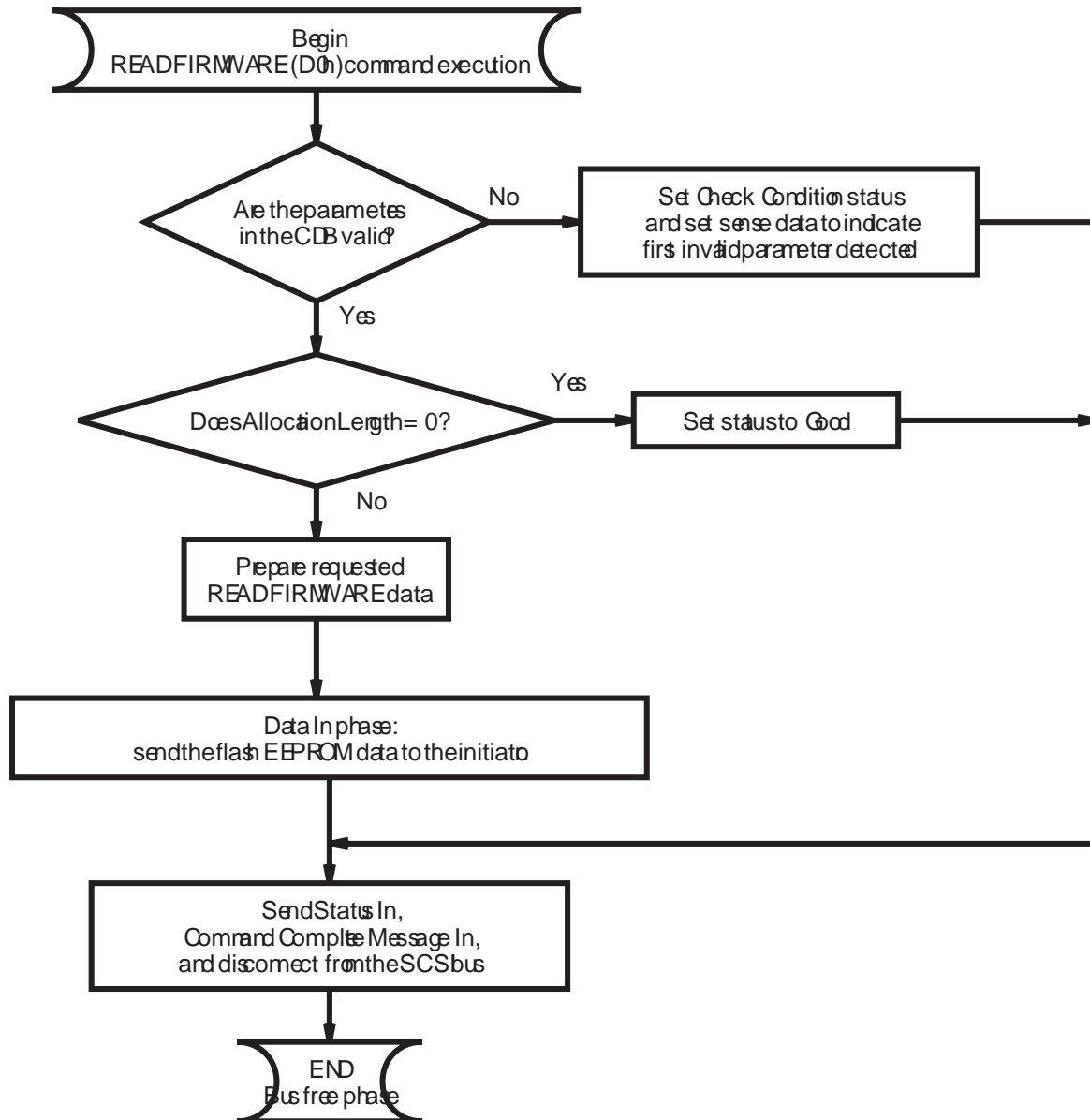


Figure 14-1 READ FIRMWARE command execution

14.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the READ FIRMWARE command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when the library is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command was issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit was set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 14-1 for sense data).
- A Console write or read firmware operation is already in progress when the library receives the READ FIRMWARE command (see Table 14-1 for sense data).

Table 14-1 Invalid parameters in the READ FIRMWARE CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	24h	00h	1	1	0	0	0002h	Invalid firmware offset.
5h	3Fh	87h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Cannot execute the READ FIRMWARE command because a Console write firmware operation is in progress.
5h	3Fh	88h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Cannot execute the READ FIRMWARE command because a Console read firmware operation is in progress.

Notes

15 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02	Reserved							
03	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
04								
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

15.1 About This Command

The RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command requests that the library return data obtained by the execution of the SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh) command. The RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command returns count comparisons on the diagnostic test you requested using the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command.

Note: In a multi-initiator environment, you should reserve the entire library using the RESERVE (16h) command before you request diagnostic data. Do not issue the RELEASE (17h) command until after you have successfully obtained data with the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command. You should issue commands in the following order:

1. RESERVE (16h) for the entire library
2. SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh)
3. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch)
4. RELEASE (17h)

If you issue a RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command without first sending a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command or if you requested a self test with the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command, the library returns Good status without any diagnostic data.

15.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Allocation Length – Bytes 03 and 04

This field allows you to specify the number of bytes that you are allocating for diagnostic data. If you do not want the library to transfer diagnostic data, set this field to 0.

The library terminates the data in phase either when the number of bytes specified by the Allocation Length field have been transferred or when all available diagnostic data has been transferred, whichever is less.

15.3 What the Library Returns

Supported Diagnostics Page (Page Code 00h)

The Supported Diagnostics Page lists all diagnostic page codes that the library implements in ascending order, beginning with page code 00h.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Page Code							
01	Reserved							
02	(MSB) Page Length (LSB)							
03								
04	Supported Diagnostics (00h)							
05	Home gripper fingers (80h)							
06	Home CHM (81h)							
07	Cycle pick/place cartridge (82h)							
08	Cycle gripper fingers (83h)							
09	Cycle short axis (84h)							
10	Cycle long axis (85h)							
11	Cycle drum axis (86h – EXB-220 only)							
12	Cycle door solenoid (87h)							

Page Code – Byte 00

This field identifies this as the Supported Diagnostics page. The value for this field is 00h.

Page Length – Bytes 02 and 03

This field specifies the number of bytes that follow in this page. The value for this field is 8h (8) for the EXB-210 and 9h (9) for the EXB-220.

Supported Page List – Bytes 04 through 12

These bytes list the diagnostic pages supported by the library. See Table 20-2 on page 20-6 for complete descriptions of the diagnostic tests corresponding to these pages.

Diagnostic Page Format (Page Codes 80h through 87h)

Page codes 80h through 87h all return diagnostic data in the page format shown below.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Page Code							
01	Reserved							
02	(MSB) Parameter List Length (02h) (LSB)							
03								
04	Requested Test Count							
05	Completed Test Count							

Page Code – Byte 00

This field indicates the page for which data is being returned. Valid values for this field are 80h through 87h; page code 86h applies to the EXB-220 only.

Parameter List Length – Bytes 02 and 03

This field indicates the number of bytes that follow this field. The value for this field is 02h.

Requested Test Count – Byte 04

This field indicates the number of times you requested the library to perform the diagnostic test. This value corresponds to the Test Count field in the Parameter List of the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command.

Completed Test Count – Byte 05

This field specifies the number of times the library performed the requested diagnostic test. If this value differs from the value in the Requested Test Count field, the library was unable to complete the test the requested number of times.

Note: See Chapter 20 (SEND DIAGNOSTICS command) for a list of the valid number of times that you can perform each test with one command.

15.4 How the Library Executes This Command

This section describes how the library executes the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command. The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 15-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library response to ATN with a message out phase.

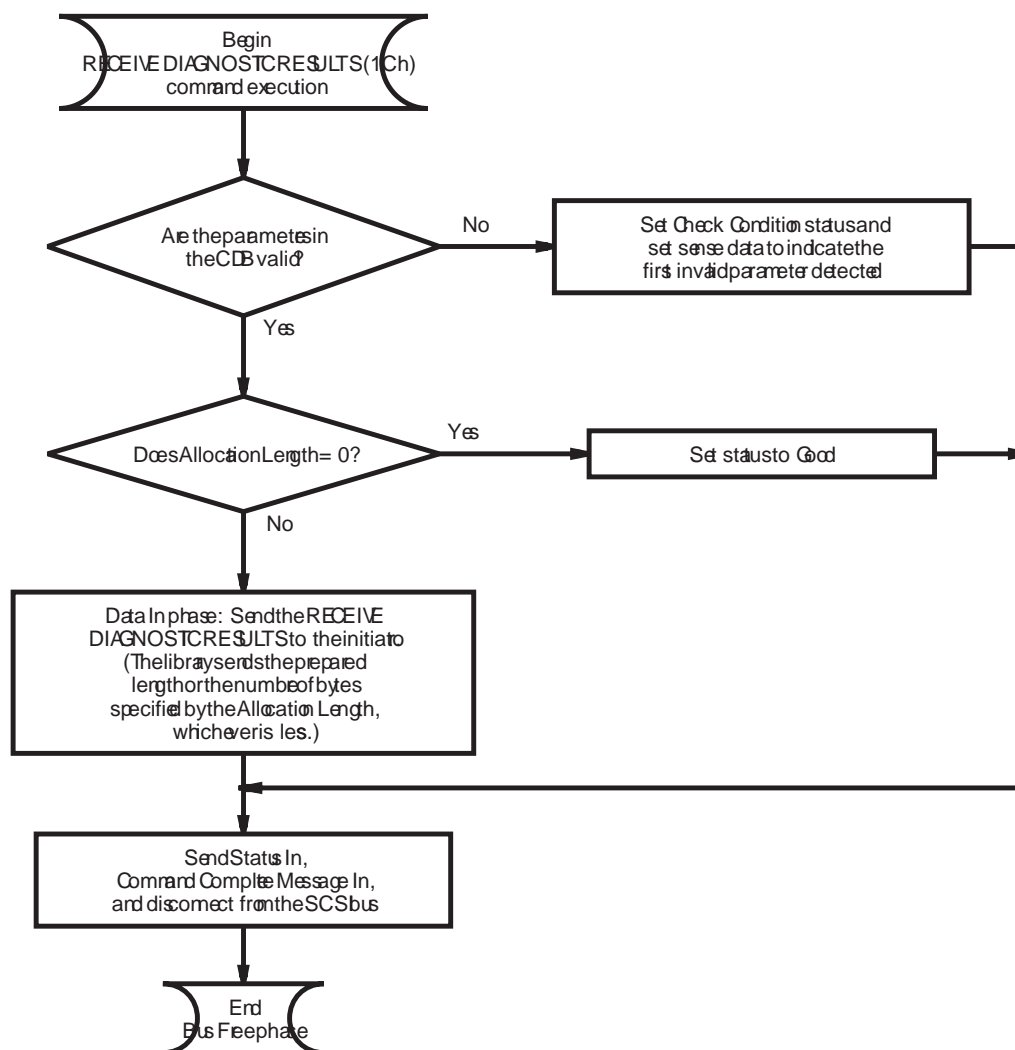


Figure 15-1 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command execution

15.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.

16 RELEASE (17h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1
01	Logical Unit Number			3rdPty	Third Party Device ID			Element
02	Reservation Identification							
03	Reserved							
04								
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

16.1 About This Command

The RELEASE command enables you to release reservations of the library or elements of the library that you made with the RESERVE (16h) command. For information on the RESERVE command, see Chapter 19. For default element addresses for the library, refer to Figure 1-5 on page 1-8 and Figure 1-6 on page 1-9.

Releasing an unreserved library or unreserved elements of the library is not an error.

Only the initiator that reserved the library or library elements can release the reserved library or elements. If another initiator attempts to release a reserved library or element, the library returns Good status and does not release the library or element.

16.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must always be 0.

3rdPty – Byte 01, Bit 4

The library does not support third party operations, so the value for this field must be 0.

Third Party Device ID – Byte 01, Bits 3 through 1

The library does not support third party reservations, so the value for this field must be 0.

Element – Byte 01, Bit 0

The valid values for this field are as follows:

0 – Release the library or any reserved elements from reserved status

1 – Release the reserved elements associated with the Reservation Identification (byte 02) from reserved status

Reservation Identification – Byte 02

This field specifies a value established by the initiator to identify the specific reservation request (see Chapter 19). If the Element field (byte 01, bit 0) is 0, this field is ignored.

16.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 16-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 16-1 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

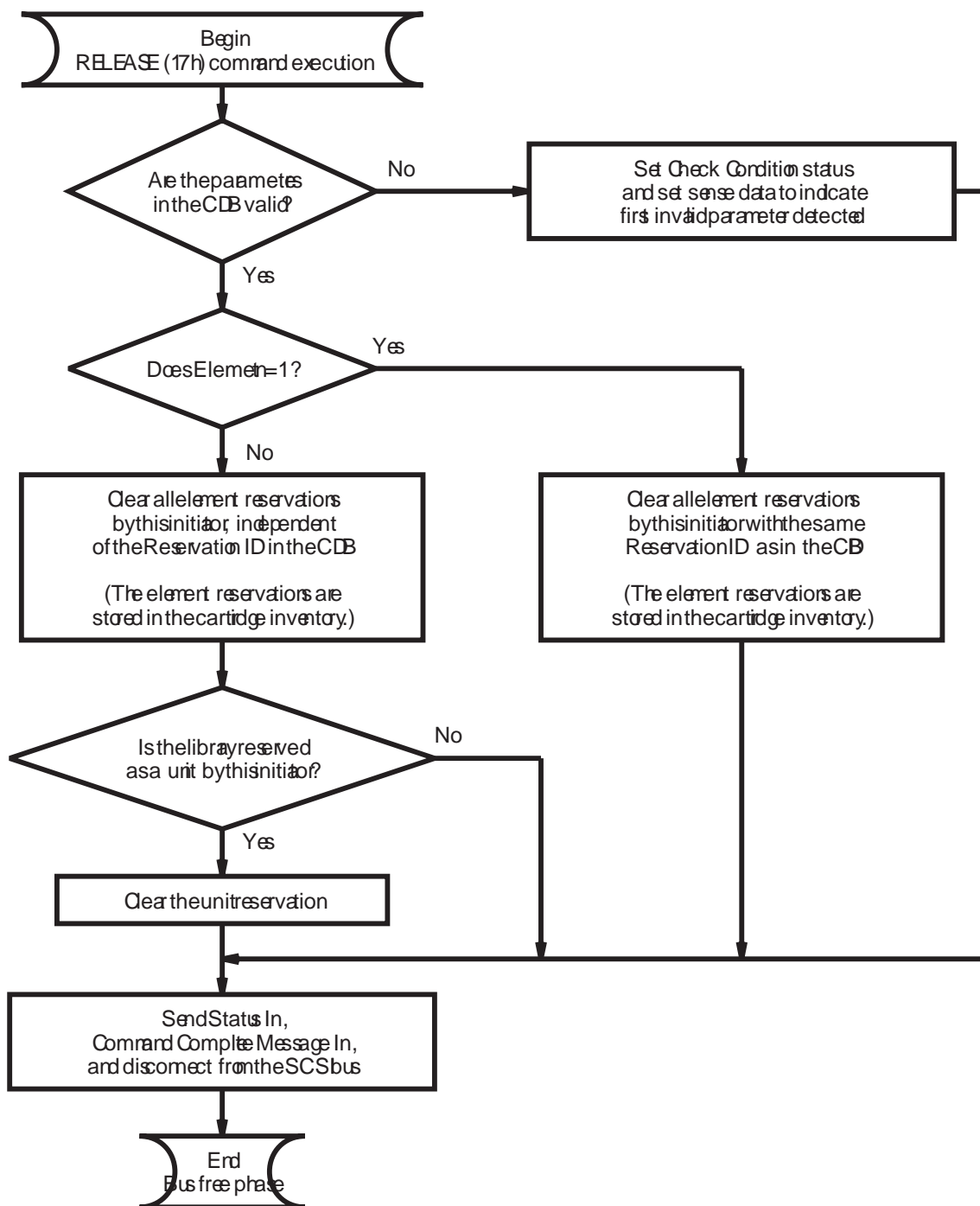


Figure 16-1 RELEASE command execution

16.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the RELEASE command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library never returns Reservation Conflict status for the RELEASE command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 16-1 for sense data).

Table 16-1 Invalid parameters in the RELEASE CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	24h	00	1	1	1	4h	0001h	Error in 3rdPty field.
5h	24h	00	1	1	1	3h	0001h	Error in Third Party Device ID field.

17 REQUEST SENSE (03h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02	Reserved							
03								
04	Number of Bytes Allocated							
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

17.1 About This Command

The REQUEST SENSE command requests that the library transfer sense data to the initiator. The library provides sense data in only the Error Code 70h, extended sense data format. The library returns a total of 18 bytes of sense data to the initiator.

The sense data is constructed and saved on a per-initiator and requested LUN basis. The library preserves sense data for all initiators until the data is retrieved by the REQUEST SENSE command or until the library receives any other command for the same I_T_L nexus (initiator-target-LUN connection).

Sense data is available under the following circumstances:

- The previous command to the specified I_T_L nexus terminated with Check Condition status.
- The previous command to the specified I_T_L nexus terminated with an unexpected bus free error.

- The REQUEST SENSE command was issued to an unsupported LUN. In this case, the library does not return Check Condition status and returns the following sense data:

Sense key	Illegal Request (5h)
ASC	Logical unit not supported (25h)
ASCQ	0

If no sense data is available for the specified I_T_L nexus, the library returns the following sense data:

Sense key	No Sense (0h)
ASC	No additional sense information (00h)

17.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Number of Bytes Allocated – Byte 04

This field indicates the number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for returned sense data. The library provides a total of 12h (18) bytes of sense data.

17.3 What the Library Returns

Sense Data

The library returns the standard extended sense bytes, as described below.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	RSVD	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
01	0							
02	0	0	0	RSVD	Sense Key			
03 ⋮ 06	(MSB) Information Bytes (LSB)							
07	Additional Sense Length							
08 ⋮ 11	(MSB) Command Specific Information (LSB)							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Field Replaceable Unit Code							
15	SKSV	(MSB)						
16	Sense Key Specific (LSB)							
17								

Sense Key – Byte 02, Bits 3 through 0

Table 17-1 contains descriptions of the sense key values supported by the library. For a list of the conditions that cause each sense key setting, refer to Appendix D.

Table 17-1 Sense key descriptions

Hex Value	Sense Key	Description
0h	No Sense	Indicates that there is no specific sense key information to be reported for the library.
2h	Not Ready	Indicates that the library is not ready to perform CHM motion commands.
4h	Hardware Error	Indicates that the library detected a hardware failure while performing the command or during a self-test. Operator intervention may be required.
5h	Illegal Request	Indicates that there was an illegal parameter in the command descriptor block or in the additional parameters supplied as data for a command, or the library is in the wrong mode to execute the command.
6h	Unit Attention	Indicates that the cartridge inventory may have been violated.
Bh	Aborted Command	Indicates that the library aborted the command. The initiator may be able to recover by trying the command again.

Information Bytes – Bytes 03 through 06

The library does not support this sense field and returns 0.

Additional Sense Length – Byte 07

This byte indicates the total number of sense bytes that follow this byte. The value returned is 0Ah.

Command Specific Information – Bytes 08 through 11

This field is not supported by the library. The value returned is 0.

Additional Sense Code (ASC) – Byte 12

This field, together with the Additional Sense Code Qualifier (byte 13), denotes a specific error condition. For a list of these error conditions, refer to Appendix D.

Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) – Byte 13

This field, together with the Additional Sense Code (byte 12), denotes a specific error condition. For a list of these error conditions, refer to Appendix D.

Field Replaceable Unit Code – Byte 14

This field is not supported by the library. The value returned is 0.

SKSV (Sense Key Specific Valid) – Byte 15, Bit 7

When this bit is set to 1, the information in the Sense Key Specific field is valid. The SKSV field can be set to 1 only for a sense key of Illegal Request (5h).

Sense Key Specific – Byte 15, Bits 6 through 0; Bytes 16 and 17

When the SKSV bit is set to 1, the information contained in this field indicates which field in the CDB or parameter list of a command caused the Check Condition status. This field, valid only for a sense key of Illegal Request (5h), is defined as shown in Table 17-2.

Table 17-2 Meaning of Sense Key Specific field for Illegal Request (5h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV	C/D	Reserved		BPV	Bit Pointer		
16	(MSB) <div>Field Pointers</div> (LSB)							
17								

C/D (Command/Data) – Byte 15, Bit 6 Indicates whether the Check Condition status resulted from an illegal parameter in either the command descriptor block (Command) or the parameter list (Data) of a particular command, as follows:

- 0 – The Check Condition status resulted from an illegal parameter in the parameter list (Data)
- 1 – The Check Condition status resulted from an illegal parameter in the command descriptor block (Command)

BPV (Bit Pointer Valid) – Byte 15, Bit 3 Indicates whether the value in the Bit Pointer field is valid, as follows:

- 0 – The value contained in the Bit Pointer is not valid
- 1 – The value contained in the Bit Pointer (byte 15, bits 2 through 0) is valid

The value in the Bit Pointer field is valid when the field of the CDB or parameter list that caused the error is less than one byte long.

Bit Pointer – Byte 15, Bits 2 through 0 Specifies the bit of the byte identified by the Field Pointer (bytes 16 and 17). When a multiple-bit field is in error, the Bit Pointer contains the value of the most significant bit of the field. The most significant bit of a multiple-bit field is the bit with the highest bit number. For example, if a field consists of bits 5, 4, and 3, the most significant bit is bit 5.

Field Pointer – Bytes 16 and 17 Contains the number of the byte in which the error occurred. Byte numbers start at 00. When a multiple-byte field is in error, the Field Pointer contains the value of the most significant byte of the field. The most significant byte of a multiple-byte field is the byte with the lowest byte number. For example, if a field consists of bytes 02, 03, and 04, the most significant byte is byte 02.

Priorities of Sense Bytes

Multiple errors may occur during the processing of a single SCSI command. The sense key reflects the last error that occurred. For example, if a message error occurs after an unrecoverable hardware error, the library handles the errors in the following manner:

- The message error is reported.
- The hardware error is preserved, and the next motion command issued by any host terminates with Check Condition status.
- A subsequent REQUEST SENSE command reports the hardware error.

Sense Byte Pending Status

When the library reports Check Condition status in response to a command from an initiator, the library retains the sense byte pending status, including error information and Check Condition status for the initiator, until one of the following occurs:

- Error information is reset by the next command execution for the same initiator
- Error information is reset by a reset or power-on condition.

17.4 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 17-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the REQUEST SENSE command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

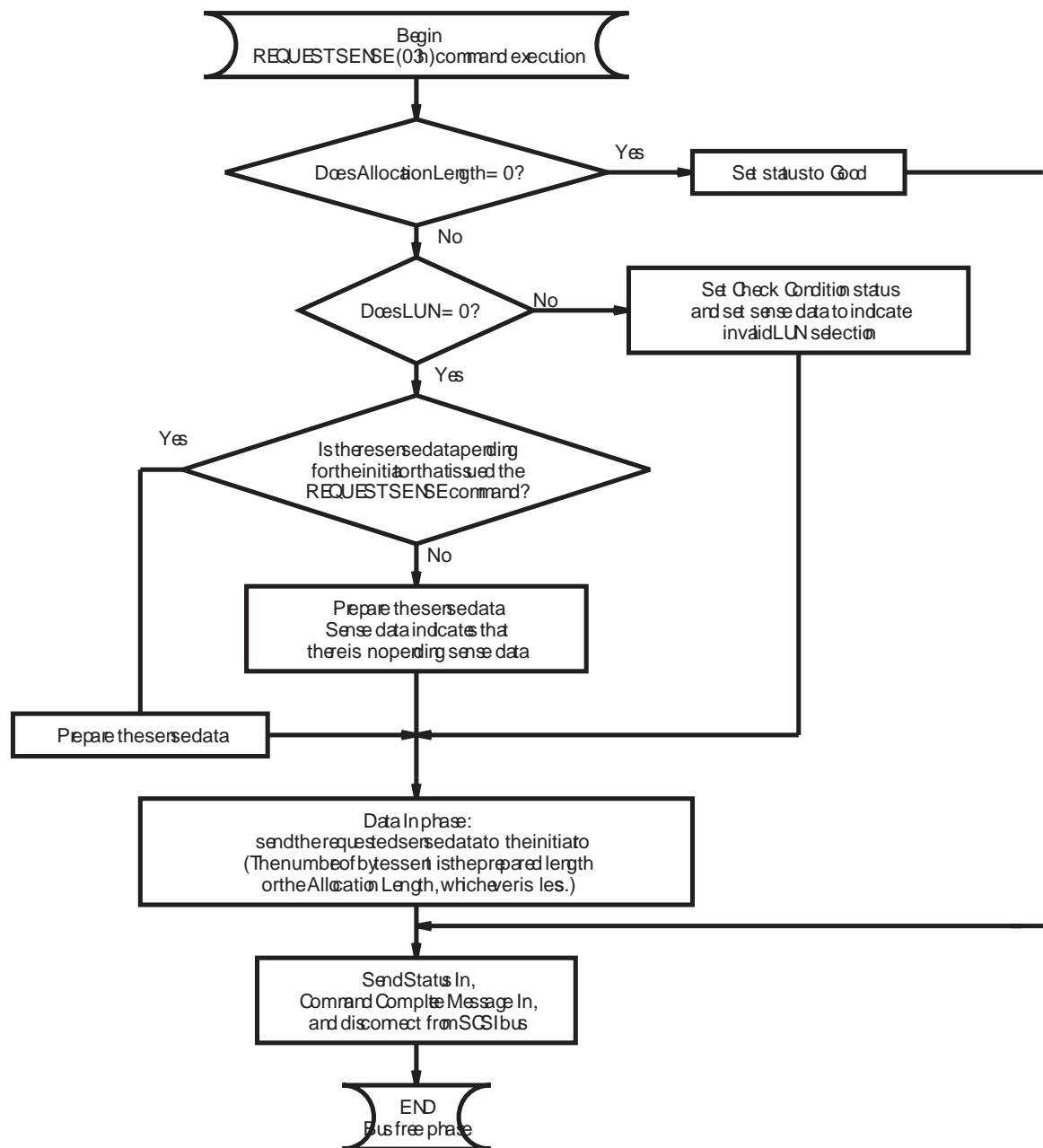


Figure 17-1 REQUEST SENSE command execution

17.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the REQUEST SENSE command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library never returns Busy status for the REQUEST SENSE command.

Reservation Conflict

The library never returns Reservation Conflict status for the REQUEST SENSE command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.

Notes

18 REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1
01	Logical Unit Number			VolTag	Element Type Code			
02	(MSB) Starting Element Address (LSB)							
03								
04	(MSB) Number of Elements (LSB)							
05								
06	Reserved							
07	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
08								
09								
10	Reserved							
11	0	0	Reserved				0	0

18.1 About This Command

The REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command requests that the library return the element descriptors created as a result of the SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) command. Data is returned in element address order. For information about the SEND VOLUME TAG command, see Chapter 21.

Note: In a multi-initiator environment, you should reserve the entire library using the RESERVE (16h) command before you request element descriptors. Do not issue the RELEASE (17h) command until after you have successfully obtained data with the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command. You should issue commands in the following order:

1. RESERVE (16h) for the entire library
2. SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h)
3. REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h)
4. RELEASE (17h)

► **Important** If the library does not have a bar code scanner and you issue this command, it returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request (5h), the ASC set to 85h, and the ASCQ set to 01h.

18.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

VolTag – Byte 01, Bit 4

This field indicates whether you want the library to return the volume tag (bar code label) information searched for by the SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) command. Volume tag information is obtained when the library scans the bar code label affixed to each cartridge in the library. The valid values for this field are as follows:

- 0 – Do not report volume tag information
- 1 – Report volume tag information

Note: For specifications for the bar code labels that can be used with the library, refer to the *Exabyte Bar Code Label Specification for 8mm Cartridges*.

Element Type Code – Byte 01, Bits 3 through 0

This field specifies the element types you want the library to report on. The library supports the following Element Type Codes:

- 0h – All element types
- 1h – Medium transport element (CHM)
- 2h – Storage element (cartridge magazine slots and fixed slot)
- 4h – Data transfer element (tape drives)

For an Element Type Code of 0h, the element types are reported in element address order, beginning with the Starting Element Address.

Starting Element Address – Bytes 02 and 03

This field indicates the element address at which to start the transfer of data. Only elements with addresses greater than or equal to the starting address are reported. Element descriptor blocks are not generated for undefined element addresses.

Note: The Starting Element Address must be a valid address for the library, but does not have to be an address of the type requested in the Element Type Code. The library only returns element descriptors for the elements of requested element type within the range defined by the Starting Element Address and Number of Elements fields.

Number of Elements – Bytes 04 and 05

This field represents the actual number of element descriptors to be returned. This is an actual number of element descriptors to be returned, not an element address range.

The library returns element descriptors of the requested element type, starting with the first element address equal to or greater than the value in the Element Address field. All element descriptors are returned for the number of element descriptors specified in this field, or the number of element descriptors available, whichever is less.

It is not an error to specify FFFFh as a value for this field if you want the library to return all available elements.

Allocation Length – Bytes 07 through 09

The Allocation Length specifies the total available length in bytes you are allocating for returned element descriptors. Only complete element element descriptors are returned. The library returns element descriptors until *one* of the following conditions is met:

- The library has returned all available element descriptors.
- The library has returned the number of element descriptors specified in the Number of Elements field.
- The library has returned the number of bytes specified in the Allocation Length field.
- There is less allocation length space available than the next complete element descriptor to be returned.

18.3 What the Library Returns

Volume Element Address Header

The library returns one Volume Element Address Header for each REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command that it receives.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) First Element Address Reported (LSB)							
01								
02	(MSB) Number of Elements Reported (LSB)							
03								
04	Reserved			Send Action Code				
05	(MSB) Byte Count of Report Available (LSB)							
06								
07								

First Element Address Reported – Bytes 00 and 01

This field indicates the address of the first element that has a bar code label that matches the template sent by the SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) command.

Number of Elements Reported – Bytes 02 and 03

This field indicates the total number of element descriptors available to be transferred to the initiator. The status of these elements is returned if a sufficient Allocation Length value was specified in the CDB.

Send Action Code – Byte 04, Bits 4 through 0

This field contains the action code in the SEND VOLUME TAG command that created the data. The library supports a Send Action Code of 5h.

Byte Count of Report Available – Bytes 05 through 07

This field indicates the total number of bytes of information available to be transferred to the initiator. This value is not adjusted to match the Allocation Length.

Element Status Page

The library returns one Element Status page for each group of element descriptors of the same type.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Element Type Code							
01	PVolTag	AVolTag	Reserved					
02	(MSB) Element Descriptor Length (LSB)							
03								
04	Reserved							
05	(MSB) Byte Count of Descriptor Data Available (LSB)							
06								
07								

Element Type Code – Byte 00

This field indicates the specific element type (see page 18-3) being reported by the element descriptor.

PVolTag – Byte 01, Bit 7

This field indicates if primary volume tag (bar code label) information is present, as follows:

- 0 – Volume tag bytes are omitted from the element descriptors
- 1 – Volume tag information is present

AVolTag – Byte 01, Bit 6

The library does not support alternate volume tags. The value reported for this field is 0.

Element Descriptor Length – Bytes 02 and 03

This field indicates the total number of bytes contained in a single element descriptor.

Byte Count of Descriptor Data Available – Bytes 05 through 07

This field indicates the total number of bytes of element descriptor data available for the elements of this element type that meet the CDB requirements. This value is not adjusted to match the value that you specified for the Allocation Length field. This value is the Element Descriptor Length multiplied by the number of element descriptors.

Element Descriptors

The following sections contain the field definitions for the types of elements in the library:

- **Medium transport element:** The CHM.
- **Storage elements:** Each slot in the cartridge magazine and the fixed cartridge slot.
- **Data transfer elements:** The tape drives.

Each element descriptor includes the element address and status flags. Each element descriptor may also contain sense code information as well as other information, depending on the element type.

Notes:

- The element descriptors for the types of elements are very similar, with the exception of a few of the fields. Note the differences in bytes 06 and 07.
- Although the library cannot scan a cartridge inside a tape drive, volume tag (bar code label) information can be reported if the cartridge was scanned before it was loaded into the tape drive. The library obtains this information from the cartridge inventory.
- The library does not support alternate volume tags. This information is not included in any of the element descriptors.

Medium Transport Element Descriptor

The medium transport element is the cartridge handling mechanism (CHM). The library contains one CHM.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) Element Address (LSB)							
01								
02	Reserved					Except	RSVD	Full
03	Reserved							
04	Additional Sense Code							
05	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
06	Reserved							
07								
08								
09	SValid	Invert	Reserved					
10	(MSB) Source Storage Element Address (LSB)							
11								
12 : 47	Primary Volume Tag Information (field omitted if PVoITag = 0)							
48 : 51	Reserved (field moved up if Primary Volume Tag Information field is omitted)							

Element Address – Bytes 00 and 01

This field contains the element address of the medium transport element (CHM).

Except – Byte 02, Bit 2

The exception field indicates the current state of the CHM, as follows:

0 – The CHM is in a normal state.

1 – The CHM is in an abnormal state and the Additional Sense Code and the Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields contain information regarding the abnormal state.

Full – Byte 02, Bit 0

This field indicates whether the CHM contains a cartridge. Since no match could have been made if there were no cartridge present, the value for this field is always 1.

Additional Sense Code (ASC) – Byte 04

If the CHM is in an abnormal state, this field contains the value 83h. Refer to Table 18-1 on page 18-15 for the corresponding ASCQ values and a corrective action for each abnormal state.

Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) – Byte 05

The values for this field are listed in Table 18-1 on page 18-15, along with the corrective action to take for each abnormal state.

SValid – Byte 09, Bit 7

This bit is set as follows:

- 0 – The Source Storage Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is invalid.
- 1 – The Source Storage Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is valid.

Invert – Byte 09, Bit 6

The library uses single-sided media and does not support inverting of the media. The information reported for this field is 0.

Source Storage Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

This field shows the address of the last element from which the cartridge was moved.

Primary Volume Tag Information – Bytes 12 through 47

When the PVolTag field (in the Element Status page described in Section 18.3 on page 18-6) is set to 1, this field contains the volume tag (bar code label) information of the cartridge in the CHM. The library supports only eight bytes of volume tag information, so only the first eight bytes reported are valid.

Storage Element Descriptor

Each of the slots in the cartridge magazine and the fixed cartridge slot is a storage element. The library contains 10 cartridge slots and 1 fixed cartridge slot.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) <div>Element Address</div> (LSB)							
01								
02	Reserved				Access	Except	RSVD	Full
03	Reserved							
04	Additional Sense Code							
05	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
06	Reserved							
07								
08								
09	SValid	Invert	Reserved					
10	(MSB) <div>Source Element Address</div> (LSB)							
11								
12 ⋮ 47	Primary Volume Tag Information (field omitted if PVolTag = 0)							
48 ⋮ 51	Reserved (field moved up if Primary Volume Tag Information field is omitted)							

Element Address – Bytes 00 and 01

This field contains the element address of the storage element (cartridge storage slot or fixed cartridge slot).

Access – Byte 02, Bit 3

This bit indicates whether the CHM can access the cartridge. The cartridge storage location is accessible if the cartridge magazine is installed. Accessibility is reported as follows:

- 0 – The cartridge magazine is not accessible (not installed).
- 1 – The cartridge magazine is accessible (installed).

Note: The fixed cartridge slot is always accessible

Except – Byte 02, Bit 2

The exception bit indicates the current state of the cartridge slot, as follows:

- 0 – The cartridge slot is in a normal state.
- 1 – The cartridge slot is in an abnormal state and the Additional Sense Code and the Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields contain information regarding the abnormal state.

Full – Byte 02, Bit 0

This bit indicates whether the slot contains a cartridge. Since no match could have been made if there was no cartridge present, the value for this bit is always 1.

Additional Sense Code (ASC) – Byte 04

If slot is in an abnormal state, this field contains the value 83h. Refer to Table 18-1 on page 18-15 for the corresponding ASCQ values and a corrective action for each abnormal state.

Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) – Byte 05

The values for this field are listed in Table 18-1 on page 18-15, along with the corrective action to take for each abnormal state.

SValid – Byte 09, Bit 7

This bit is set as follows:

- 0 – The Source Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is invalid.
- 1 – The Source Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is valid.

Invert – Byte 09, Bit 6

The library uses single-sided media and does not support inverting of the media (recording on both sides of the tape). The value reported for this bit is 0.

Source Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

This field shows the address of the last element from which the cartridge was moved.

Primary Volume Tag Information – Bytes 12 through 47

When the PVolTag field (in the Element Status page described in Section 18.3 on page 18-6) is set to 1, this field contains the volume tag (bar code label) information of the cartridge in this storage location. The library supports only eight bytes of volume tag information, so only the first eight bytes reported are valid.

Data Transfer Element Descriptor

The data transfer element is the tape drive. The library can contain one or two tape drives.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	(MSB) <div>Element Address</div> (LSB)							
01								
02	Reserved				Access	Except	RSVD	Full
03	Reserved							
04	Additional Sense Code							
05	Additional Sense Code Qualifier							
06	NotBus	RSVD	IDValid	LUValid	RSVD	Logical Unit Number		
07	SCSI Bus Address							
08	Reserved							
09	SValid	Invert	Reserved					
10	(MSB) <div>Source Storage Element Address</div> (LSB)							
11								
12 ⋮ 47	Primary Volume Tag Information (omitted if PVolTag = 0)							
48 ⋮ 51	Reserved (field moved up if Volume Tag Information field is omitted)							

Element Address – Bytes 00 and 01

This field contains the address of the data transfer element (the tape drive).

Access – Byte 02, Bit 3

This bit indicates whether the CHM can pick or place a cartridge at the tape drive location. The cartridge is accessible if it is ejected from the tape drive at that location. Accessibility is reported as follows:

- 0 – The tape drive location may not be accessible (a cartridge was last reported in the tape drive but is not currently ejected).
- 1 – The tape drive location is accessible (a cartridge is ejected and waiting to be picked, or the tape drive is empty).

Except – Byte 02, Bit 2

The exception bit indicates the current state of the tape drive, as follows:

- 0 – The tape drive is in a normal state.
- 1 – The tape drive is in an abnormal state and the Additional Sense Code and the Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields contain information regarding the abnormal state.

Full – Byte 02, Bit 0

This bit indicates if the tape drive contains a cartridge. Since a match could have been made only if there was a cartridge present, the value for this bit is always 1.

Additional Sense Code (ASC) – Byte 04

If the tape drive is in an abnormal state, this field contains the value 83h. Refer to Table 18-1 on page 18-15 for the corresponding ASCQ values and a corrective action for each abnormal state.

Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) – Byte 05

The values for this field are listed in Table 18-1 on page 18-15, along with the corrective action to take for each abnormal state.

NotBus – Byte 06, Bit 7

This bit is not supported by the library. The value reported for bit is 0.

IDValid – Byte 06, Bit 5

This bit indicates that the SCSI Bus Address field (byte 07) contains valid information as follows:

- 0 – The SCSI Bus Address field is not valid because a tape drive is not installed at this location.
- 1 – The SCSI Bus Address field is valid because a tape drive is installed at this location.

LUValid – Byte 06, Bit 4

This bit indicates that the Logical Unit Number field (byte 06, bits 2 through 0) contains valid information as follows:

- 0 – The Logical Unit Number field is not valid because a tape drive is not installed at this location.
- 1 – The Logical Unit Number field is valid because a tape drive is installed at this location.

Logical Unit Number – Byte 06, Bits 2 through 0

The value reported for this field is 0.

SCSI Bus Address – Byte 07

The value reported for this field is the tape drive's SCSI ID.

SValid – Byte 09, Bit 7

This bit is set as follows:

- 0 – The Source Storage Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is invalid.
- 1 – The Source Storage Element Address field (bytes 10 and 11) is valid.

Invert – Byte 09, Bit 6

The library uses single-sided media and does not support inverting of the media (recording on both sides of the tape). The value reported for this bit is 0.

Source Storage Element Address – Bytes 10 and 11

This field shows the addresses of the last storage element from which the cartridge was moved.

Primary Volume Tag Information – Bytes 12 through 47

When the PVolTag field (in the Element Status page described in Section 18.3 on page 18-6) is set to 1, the Primary Volume Tag Information field contains the volume tag information of the cartridge in this tape drive. The library supports only eight bytes of volume tag information, so only the first eight bytes reported are valid.

Note: Although the library cannot scan a cartridge loaded inside a tape drive, bar code label information can be reported if the cartridge was scanned before it was loaded into the tape drive. The library obtains this information from the cartridge inventory. Check to see if the Except field (byte 02, bit 2) is set to 1. If it is, the label information reported may be inaccurate because the cartridge inventory is questionable.

ASC and ASCQ Values for Abnormal States

Table 18-1 contains a list of the ASC and ASCQ values that appear in the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields of an element descriptor if the element is in an abnormal state. Table 18-1 also indicates the corrective action for each abnormal state. The Except field of an element descriptor indicates if the element is in an abnormal state.

Table 18-1 ASC and ASCQ values for abnormal element conditions

ASC	ASCQ	Description	Action
83h	00h	Label questionable	The bar code label is questionable. Issue an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h or E7h) command. The library cannot read the label on a cartridge in a tape drive.
83h	03h	Label and full status questionable	The library was powered on or the front door was opened. The cartridge inventory may have been violated. Issue an INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h or E7h) command.

18.4 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed. Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete list of conditions that the library checks while it is receiving and after it has received the CDB from the initiator.

Figure 18-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 18-2 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

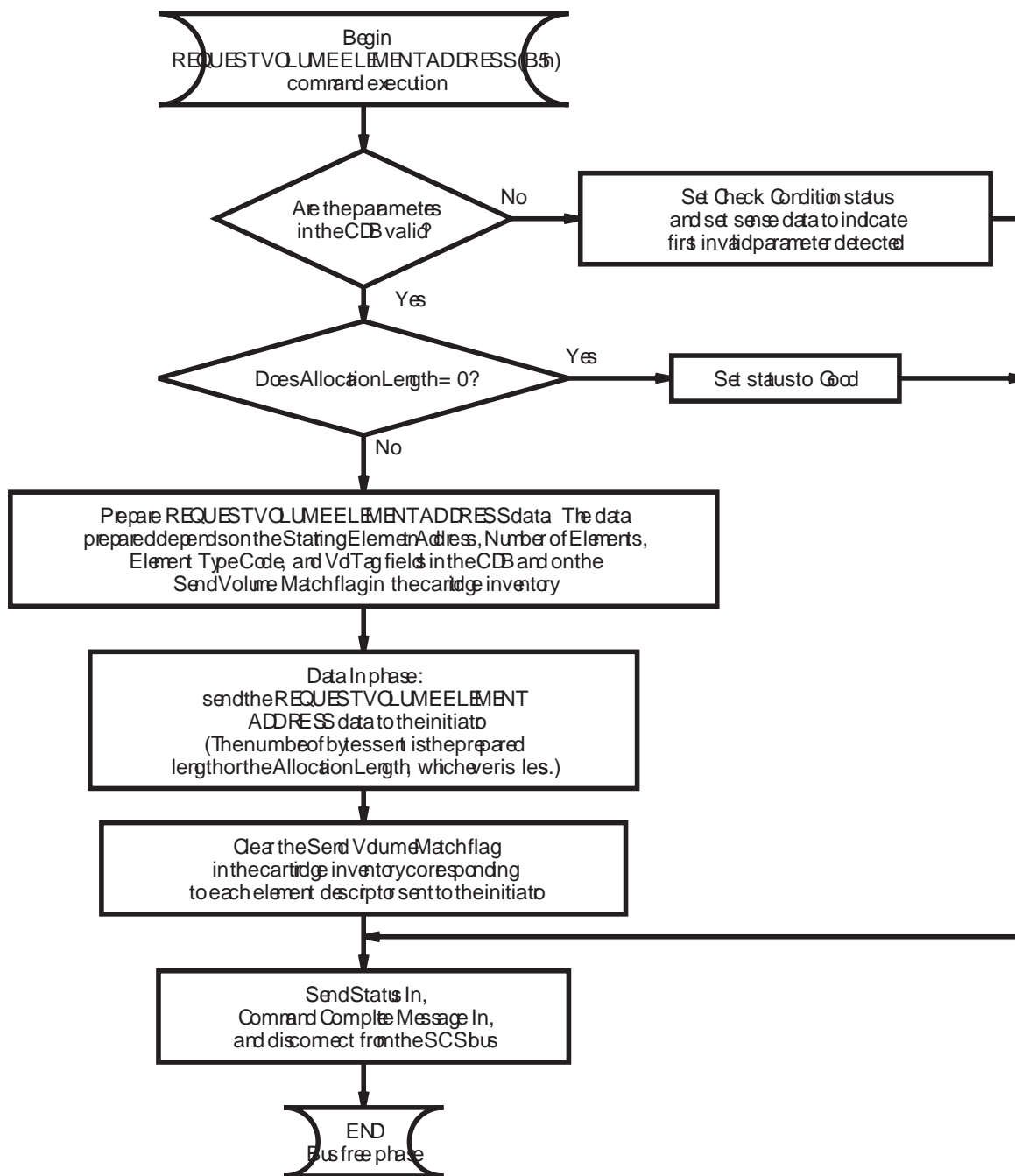


Figure 18-1 REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command execution

18.5 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- The library is not ready because the door is open, or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.
- You issue this command and no bar code scanner is installed (see Table 18-2 for sense data).
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid (see Table 18-2 for sense data).

Table 18-2 Invalid parameters in the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	0	0002h	Invalid starting element address.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	3h	0001h	Invalid element type code.
5h	85h	01h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Configuration problem: No bar code scanner is installed.

Notes

19 RESERVE (16h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0
01	Logical Unit Number			3rdPty	Third Party Device ID			Element
02	Reservation Identification							
03	(MSB) <div>Element List Length</div> (LSB)							
04								
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

19.1 About This Command

The RESERVE command allows the initiator to perform two types of reservations:

- Unit reservation — reservation of the library as a whole.
- Element reservation — reservation of specific elements of the library, including storage elements (the cartridge storage slots or the fixed cartridge slot), the tape drives, and the CHM.

Reservations can be released with a RELEASE (17h) command from the same initiator, a reset, or a power-on of the library.

To modify or supersede a previous element reservation, issue a RESERVE command with the same Reservation Identification. If the superseding reservation does not result in any reservation conflicts or error conditions, the library releases the previous reservation and completes the new reservations. A unit reservation of the library will supersede any previous element reservations by the same initiator.

Notes:

- If the library is reserved as a unit, the library processes only the following commands from another initiator:
 - INQUIRY
 - RELEASE
 - REQUEST SENSE
 - ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL

All other commands result in a Reservation Conflict (18h) status.

- If an initiator has reserved at least one element, another initiator cannot do the following:
 - Issue a MODE SELECT command that changes any element addresses. If the library receives such a command, it returns a Reservation Conflict (18h) status to the initiator.
 - Move a cartridge to or from that element.
 - Issue a WRITE FIRMWARE command to load new flash EEPROM code.
- If an initiator has reserved the CHM, the library returns Reservation Conflict (18h) status to the following commands from another initiator:
 - INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS
 - INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE
 - MOVE MEDIUM
 - POSITION TO ELEMENT
 - SEND DIAGNOSTICS (except Page Code 00h, Supported pages; and Page Code 87h, Cycle door solenoid)

19.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

3rdPty – Byte 01, Bit 4

The library does not support third party reservations, so the value for this field must be 0.

Third Party Device ID – Byte 01, Bits 3 through 1

The library does not support third party reservations, so the value for this field must be 0.

Element – Byte 01, Bit 0

This field specifies whether you are reserving the entire library or a series of library elements, as follows:

0 – Reserve the entire library.

1 – Reserve a series of elements, identified by the Reservation Identification field (byte 02) and specified by the Element List Descriptor.

Reservation Identification – Byte 02

This field allows you to assign an identification number to a reservation request that reserves a series of elements. You can assign any one-byte number you want. You can use this number with the RELEASE (17h) command to release the same series of elements (see Chapter 16 for more information).

Element List Length – Bytes 03 and 04

This field specifies the total length in bytes of the element list descriptors that you are sending. Each element list descriptor is 6 bytes, so the valid values for this field are 0, 6, and increments of 6.

For the EXB-210, the maximum value for this field is 84 (14×6), where 14 is the maximum number of elements in the library and 6 is the number of bytes required for each element list descriptor.

For the EXB-220, the maximum value for this field is 144 (24×6), where 24 is the maximum number of elements in the library and 6 is the number of bytes required for each element list descriptor.

If the Element field (byte 01, bit 0) is 0, this field is ignored.

If the Element field (byte 01, bit 0) is 1 and the value for the Element List Length field is 0, no elements are reserved.

Element List Descriptor

After sending the RESERVE CDB, you send zero or more Element List Descriptors to reserve specific library elements.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Reserved							
01								
02	(MSB) Number of Elements (LSB)							
03								
04	(MSB) Element Address (LSB)							
05								

Number of Elements – Bytes 02 and 03

This field allows you to specify the number of elements to be reserved. If you specify 0 for this field, all elements starting at the Element Address (bytes 04 and 05) through the last element address for the library are reserved.

Element Address – Bytes 04 and 05

This field allows you to specify the element or the starting address of a series of elements to be reserved. See Figure 1-5 on page 1-8 and Figure 1-6 on page 1-9 for the default element addresses for the library.

19.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

The actions that the library takes for the RESERVE command depend on whether the request is for a unit reservation or an element reservation. Figure 19-1 shows the action that the library takes for a request to reserve the entire library as a unit. Figure 19-2 shows the action that the library takes for a request to reserved an element or group of elements.

As shown in Figure 19-1 and Figure 19-2, the library validates the parameters in the CDB and the element descriptor data. Table 19-1 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB and in the element descriptor data.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase.

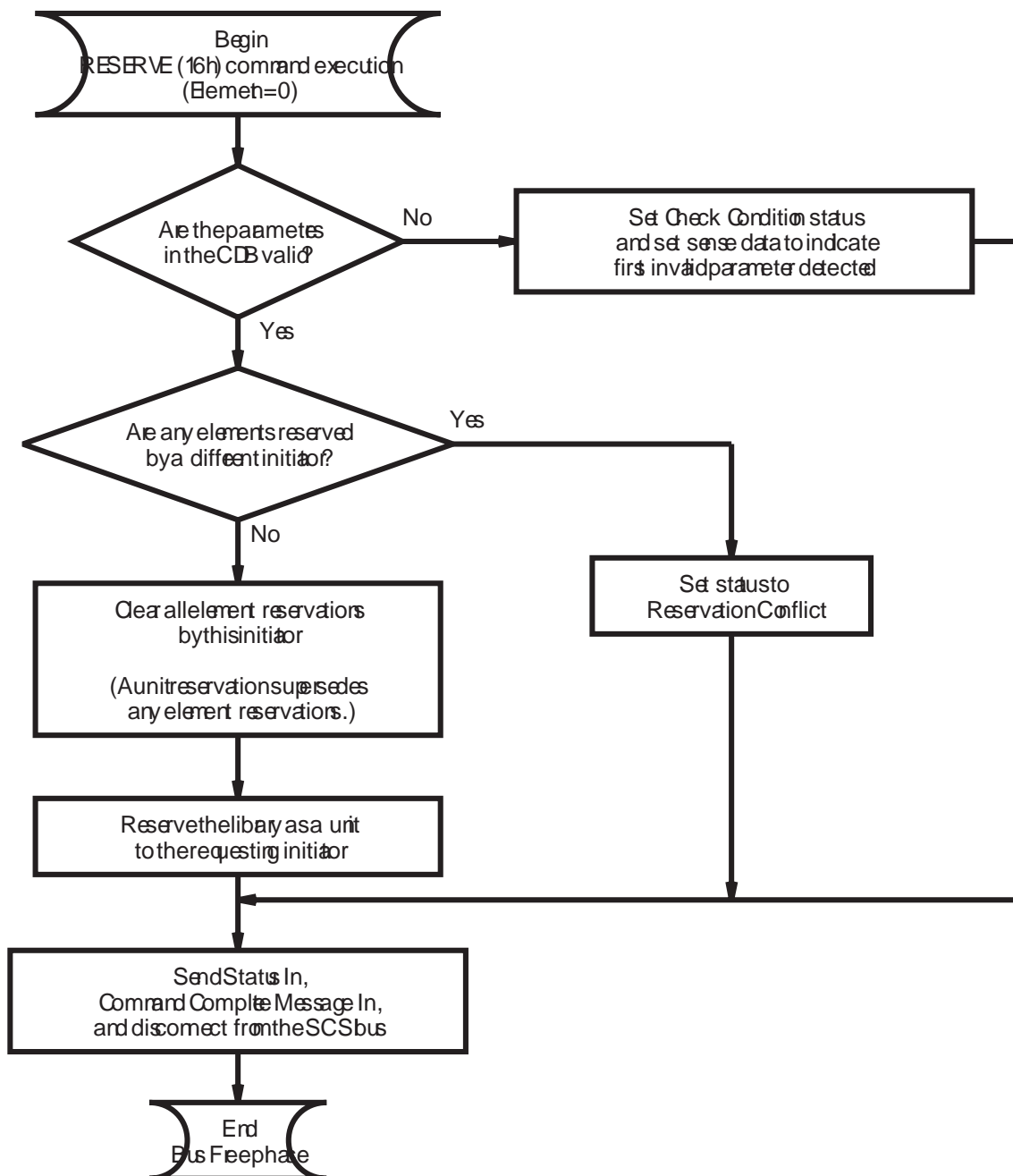


Figure 19-1 RESERVE command execution – unit reservation

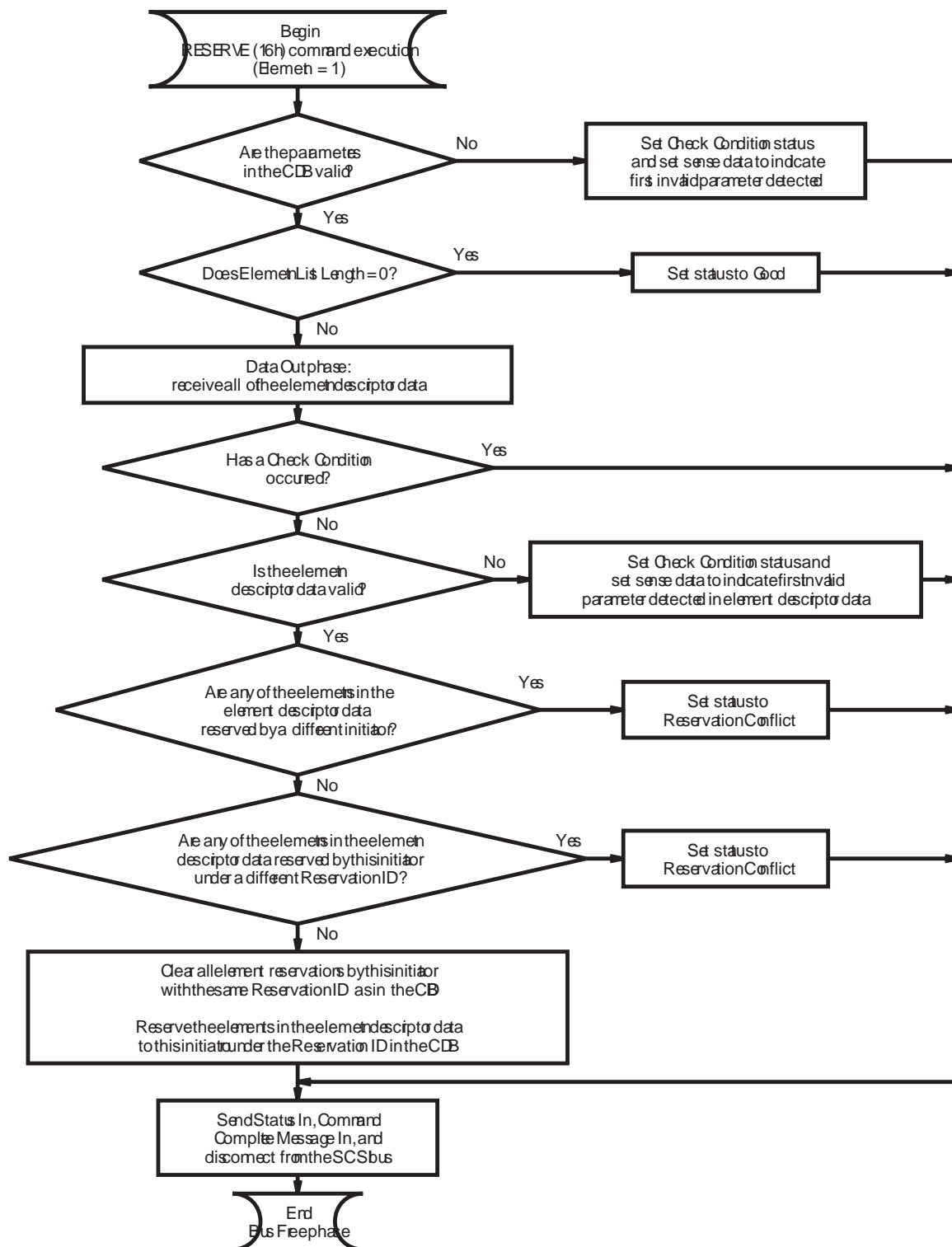


Figure 19-2 RESERVE command execution – element reservation

19.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the RESERVE command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when:

- The library is reserved by a different initiator
- An initiator attempts to reserve an element that is reserved by a different initiator
- An initiator attempts to reserve an element it has already reserved under a different Reservation Identification

If an element address has already been reserved by another initiator, none of the requested elements is reserved, Reservation Conflict (18h) status is returned to the initiator, and the sense key is set to No Sense (0h).

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving either the CDB or the element descriptor data.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.

- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB or element descriptor data is invalid (see Table 19-1 for sense data).

Table 19-1 Invalid parameters in the RESERVE CDB and element descriptor data

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	1Ah	00h	1	1	0	0	0003h	Invalid Element List Length.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	4h	0001h	Error in 3rdPty field.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	3h	0001h	Error in Third Party Device field.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	*	Reserved field not 0.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	*	Reserved field not 0.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid element address.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	*	Overlapped element address in element list descriptor.

* The Field Pointer depends on the number of element descriptors sent.

Notes

20 SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1
01	Logical Unit Number			PF	RSVD	SelfTest	DevOfI	UnitOfI
02	Reserved							
03	Parameter List Length							
04								
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

20.1 About This Command

The SEND DIAGNOSTIC command instructs the library to perform a predefined self-test or to perform individual diagnostic procedures that you specify in the parameter list of this command. After the library has completed the diagnostic test or procedures, you can receive the results by issuing the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch) command.

If disconnect is allowed, the library disconnects from the SCSI bus when it performs any diagnostic tests.

Note: In a multi-initiator environment, you should reserve the entire library using the RESERVE (16h) command before you request diagnostic data. Do not issue the RELEASE (17h) command until after you have successfully obtained data with the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command. You should issue commands in the following order:

1. RESERVE (16h) for the entire library
2. SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh)
3. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch)
4. RELEASE (17h)

If you issue a RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command without first sending a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command or if you requested a self test with the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command, the library returns Good status without any diagnostic data.

20.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

PF (Page Format) – Byte 01, Bit 4

The value for this field must always be 1 to indicate that the SEND DIAGNOSTIC parameters conform to the page structure as specified in SCSI-2.

SelfTest – Byte 01, Bit 2

This bit indicates whether the library should perform the diagnostic test specified in the parameter list or a standard self-test, as follows:

- 0 – Perform the diagnostic test specified in the parameter list.
- 1 – Perform the standard self-test.

When the SelfTest bit is set to 1, the library performs a standard self-test, as follows:

Home the gripper fingers The gripper fingers are closed and then opened to the home position.

Home the CHM The CHM is moved to the home position on the short axis and then on the long axis.

Cycle the short axis The CHM is moved to the center of the long axis and then extended toward the cartridge magazine and back to the home position on the short axis one time.

Cycle the long axis The CHM is moved to the home position on the long axis. Then, it is moved to the other end of the long axis (in front of the tape drives) and returned back to the home position.

DevOfI (Device Offline) – Byte 01, Bit 1

Since diagnostic tests must be performed when the library is online, the valid value for this bit is 0.

UnitOfI (Unit Offline) – Byte 01, Bit 0

Since the library is a single logical unit, the valid value for this bit is 0.

Parameter List Length – Bytes 03 and 04

This field specifies the length in bytes that you are transferring to the library. Table 20-1 lists the valid values for this field.

Table 20-1 Parameter List Length valid values

When the SelfTest Bit is...	The Parameter List Length must be...	Description
0	0	No data is transferred. Good status is returned.
	4	A 4-byte parameter list follows.
	6	A 6-byte parameter list follows.
1	0	No data is transferred. Good status is returned.

If the parameter list length results in the truncation of a page, the library returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request and an ASC value indicating Invalid Field in the CDB.

SEND DIAGNOSTIC Parameter List

To request that the library perform a diagnostic test other than its standard self test, set the SelfTest bit in the CDB to 0 and use the parameter list to specify the test that you want to perform. The value that you specified in the Parameter List Length field determines the length of the parameter list that you can send. Two lengths are available: 4 and 6 bytes.

This section describes the format of the parameter list and the types of tests that you can request. Although you can request only one test for each SEND DIAGNOSTIC command, you can request that the library perform each test multiple times.

If the library returns Good status to the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command, you can use the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command to obtain the results of the specified test.

The format of the 4-byte parameter list is as follows:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Page Code							
01	Reserved							
02	(MSB)Page Length							
03	(LSB)							

Page Code – Byte 00

The Page Code must be 0. This specifies that the library should return all supported diagnostic page codes for the next RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command.

Page Length – Bytes 02 and 03

This field must be 0 to indicate that no bytes follow.

The format of the 6-byte parameter list is as follows:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Page Code							
01	Reserved							
02	(MSB) Parameter List Length (02h) (LSB)							
03								
04	Test Parameters							
05	Test Count							

Page Code – Byte 00

The Page Code specifies the test that you want to perform. See Table 20-2 for a list of the valid values for the Page Code field and a description of the available tests.

Parameter List Length – Bytes 02 and 03

This field must be 02h to indicate that two bytes follow this field.

Test Parameters – Byte 04

This field specifies a cartridge location for the Cycle pick/place cartridges test. If you specified 82h for the Page Code field, enter a value between 0 and 10 (a cartridge storage location) or 82 or 83 (a tape drive) to indicate the element address of the cartridge on which you want to perform the pick/place cycle.

If you specified any other Page Code, enter a value of 0 for this field.

Test Count – Byte 05

The Test Count field specifies the number of times you want to perform the test that you specified in the Page Code field. See Table 20-2 for a list of the valid values for the Test Count field.

Table 20-2 Diagnostic tests available for the library

Page Code	Test Count	Test Name	Description
80h	1	Home gripper fingers	The gripper fingers are closed and then opened to the home position. This test is designed to position the gripper fingers in the home position.
81h	1	Home CHM	The CHM is moved to the home position on the short axis and the long axis.
82h	1–255	Cycle pick/place cartridge	The CHM picks the cartridge at the element address specified in the parameter field and places it back in the same location. If the location is a tape drive, the CHM does not load the cartridge into the tape drive, but places it in the eject position.
83h	1–255	Cycle gripper fingers	The gripper fingers are closed and then opened to the home position.
84h	1–255	Cycle short axis	The library checks to see if there is a cartridge in the gripper. If a cartridge is present, the library returns Check Condition status. If no cartridge is present, the CHM is moved to the center of the long axis, extended toward the cartridge magazine on the short axis, and then returned to the home position on the short axis.
85h	1–255	Cycle long axis	The CHM is positioned to the home position on the long axis. Then, the CHM is moved to the other end of the long axis (in front of the tape drives) and returned back to the home position.
86h	1–255	Cycle drum axis (EXB-220 only)	For the EXB-220, the drum rotates 180 degrees for each cycle. If you issue this Page Code to the EXB-210, the library returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request (see Table 20-3 on page 20-10).
87h	1–255	Cycle door solenoid (audio test)	The door solenoid is turned off and then back on. The test ends with the door solenoid turned on. This is an audio test because you listen to the door solenoid to make sure that it is turning on and off.
88h	–	–	<i>Reserved.</i> If you issue this Page Code, the library returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to Illegal Request (see Table 20-3 on page 20-10).

20.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 20-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in both the CDB and the vendor specific data. Table 20-3 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB and in the vendor specific page of this command.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to attention by going to the message out phase or if parity errors are detected in the vendor data.

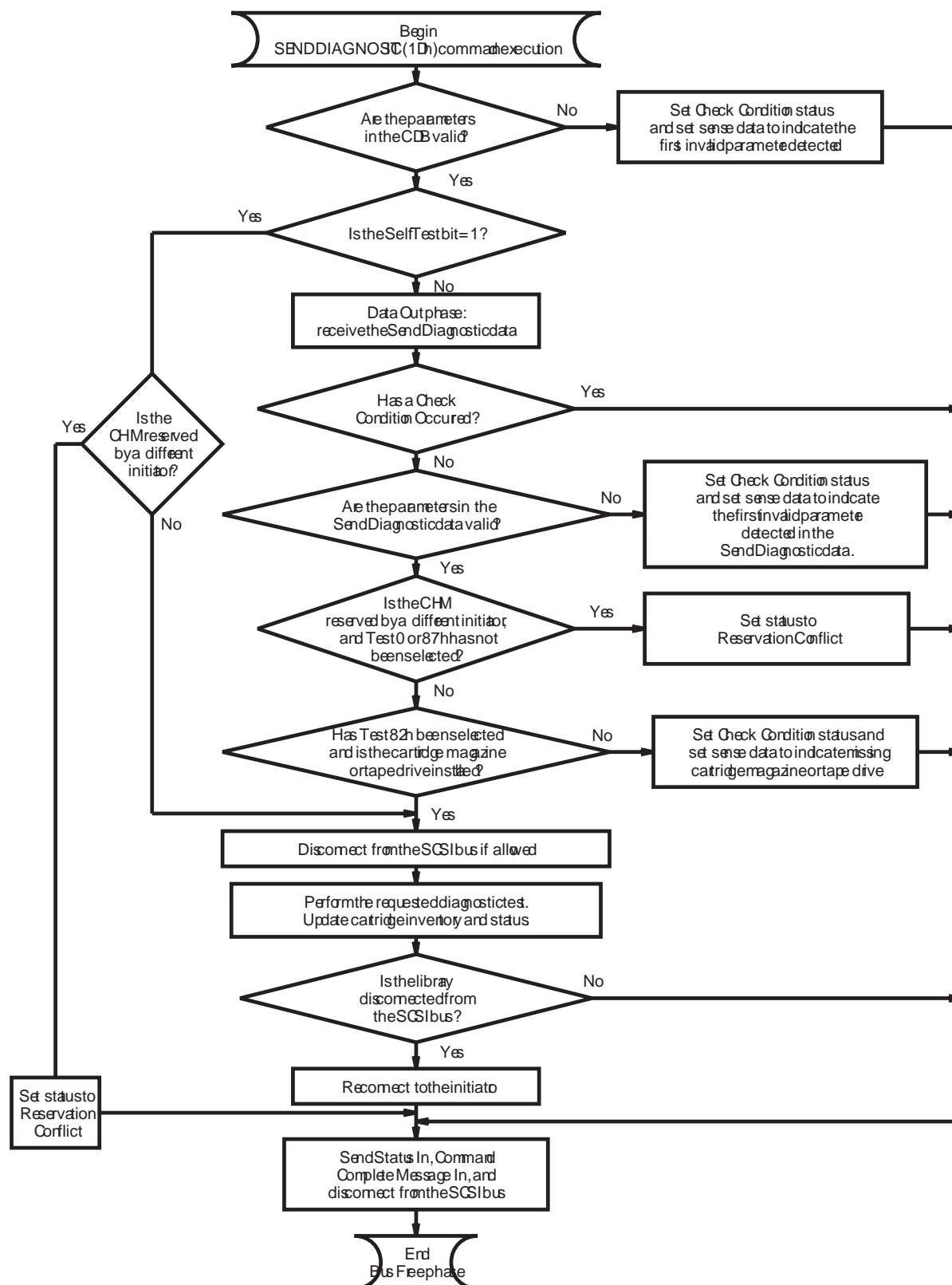


Figure 20-1 SEND DIAGNOSTIC command execution

20.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator or when an element involved in the requested diagnostic is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB or the parameter list.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- The library is not ready because the door is open, or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, one of the serial port modes, or one of the sequential modes.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.

- A parameter in the CDB or Send Diagnostic Parameter List is invalid (see Table 20-3 for sense data).
- The library encounters a hardware problem while trying to perform the requested test.

Table 20-3 Invalid parameters in the SEND DIAGNOSTIC CDB

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	1Ah	00h	1	1	0	0	0003h	Invalid Parameter List Length.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	4	0001h	Invalid Page Format field.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	1	0001h	Invalid value in DevOfI field.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	0	0001h	Invalid value in UnitOfI field.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	0000h	Invalid Page Code.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	0001h	Invalid Reserved byte in the Parameter List.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	0002h	Invalid Page Length.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	0004h	Invalid Test Parameter.
5h	26h	02h	1	0	0	0	0005h	Invalid Test Count.
5h	3Bh	0Eh	0	0	0	0	0000h	Source location for move is empty.
5h	53h	02h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Media removal prevented, test cannot be performed (applies to Page Code 87h, cycle door solenoid test)
5h	80h	01h	0	0	0	0	0000h	The CHM is holding a cartridge. You must remove the cartridge before performing the requested test.
5h	80h	03h	0	0	0	0	0000h	The source data cartridge magazine does not exist.
5h	80h	04h	0	0	0	0	0000h	The destination data cartridge magazine does not exist.
5h	80h	05h	0	0	0	0	0000h	The source tape drive does not exist.
5h	80h	06h	0	0	0	0	0000h	The destination tape drive does not exist.

21

SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0
01	Logical Unit Number			RSVD	Element Type Code			
02	(MSB) Starting Element Address (LSB)							
03								
04	Reserved							
05	Reserved			Send Action Code				
06	Reserved							
07								
08	(MSB) Parameter List Length (LSB)							
09								
10	Reserved							
11	0	0	Reserved				0	0

21.1 About This Command

The SEND VOLUME TAG command requests that the library scan the bar code labels affixed to the cartridges and compare this volume tag information with a template sent as part of a parameter list to this command. To obtain the results of the scan performed by this command, use the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h) command.

Notes:

- In a multi-initiator environment, you should reserve the entire library using the RESERVE (16h) command before you use the SEND VOLUME TAG command. Do not issue the RELEASE (17h) command until after you have successfully obtained data with the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command. You should issue the commands in the following order:
 1. RESERVE (16h) for the entire library
 2. SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h)
 3. REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h)
 4. RELEASE (17h)
- The library supports only the volume tag information scanned on the bar code label on the cartridges.
- The library does not allow the modification of volume tag information once it has been read from the bar code label.

- The library will not match the label of a cartridge with the Volume Identification Template Field in the Send Volume Tag Parameter List if any of the following errors occur while it is scanning the cartridge:
 - Cannot read bar code label
 - Cartridge magazine not present
 - Tape drive not installed
 - Bar code label upside down
 - No bar code label
 - Cannot read label because a Direct Memory Access overrun occurred

Refer to Table 13-1 on page 13-16 for a description of each of these errors.

► **Important** If the library does not have a bar code scanner and you issue this command, it returns Check Condition status with the sense key set to 5h (Illegal Request), the ASC set to 85h, and the ASCQ set to 01h.

21.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Element Type Code – Byte 01, Bits 3 through 0

This field defines the elements to be scanned for a match to the template contained in the parameter list, as follows:

- 0h – All Element Types
- 1h – Medium Transport Element (cartridge handling mechanism)
- 2h – Storage Element (cartridge slots)
- 4h – Data Transfer Element (tape drives)

For an Element Type Code of 0h, the element types are reported in element address order, beginning with the Starting Element Address.

Starting Element Address – Byte 02 and 03

This field specifies the minimum element address at which to start the search for volume tag information that matches the template in the parameter list (see page 21-5). Only elements with addresses greater than or equal to the Starting Element Address are searched.

Note: The Starting Element Address must be a valid address for the library, but does not have to be an address of the type requested in the Element Type Code. Only the elements of the requested element type are searched.

Send Action Code – Byte 05, Bits 4 through 0

This field defines the specific function to be performed by this command. The library supports a Send Action Code of 5h (translate, search all primary volume tags, and ignore sequence numbers).

Parameter List Length – Bytes 07 through 09

This field specifies the length of the parameter list following this command. The minimum length of the parameter list is 32 bytes (20h). The maximum length is 40 bytes (28h).

SEND VOLUME TAG Parameter List

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00 : 31	Volume Identification Template Field							
32 : 39	Reserved							

Volume Identification Template Field – Bytes 00 through 31

This field contains 32 bytes of volume identification information, which the library compares to the volume tag (bar code) information stored in nonvolatile memory. Only the first eight bytes are valid. Any additional bytes must be 0 (null). The template is considered terminated after the first 0 byte is detected. This field may contain the following characters:

- ? (3Fh) – This character matches any single character at that position within the field.
- * (2Ah) – This character is a wild card that matches any characters from that point on in that field. All characters past the “*” in the field are ignored.

Examples of valid templates are as follows:

Template	Matches
123?5678	12305678 12315678 and so on
123*5678	123____ (Any information starting with “123”; 5678 is ignored)

21.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from being executed.

Figure 21-1 shows the steps that the library takes when executing the command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figure, the library validates the parameters in both the CDB and in the volume tag data. Table 21-1 lists the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB and in the volume tag data.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional errors and processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase or if parity errors are detected on the volume tag data.

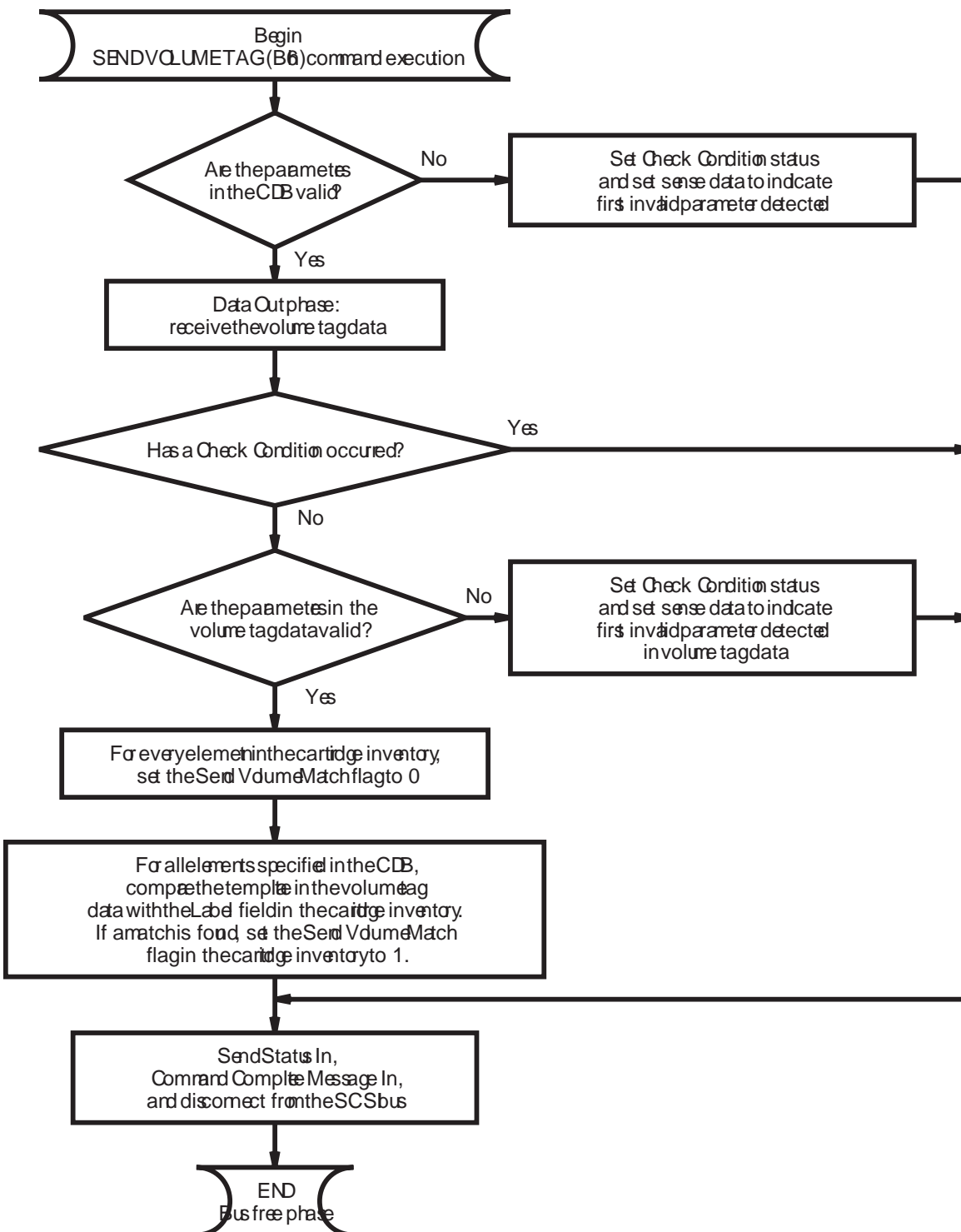


Figure 21-1 SEND VOLUME TAG command execution

21.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the SEND VOLUME TAG command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB or the volume tag data.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB or parameter list, or a parameter in the CDB or parameter list is invalid.
- You issue this command and no bar code scanner is installed.
- The library is not ready because the door is open, or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.

Table 21-1 Invalid parameters in the SEND VOLUME TAG CDB and parameter list

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
5h	1Ah	00h	1	1	0	0	0008h	Invalid Parameter List Length.
5h	21h	01h	1	1	0	0	0002h	Invalid Starting Element Address.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	3	0001h	Invalid Element Type Code.
5h	24h	00h	1	1	1	4	0005h	Invalid Send Action Code.
5h	26h	00h	1	0	0	0	*	Invalid reserved field in parameter list.
5h	85h	01h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Configuration problem: No bar code scanner is installed.

* The field pointer is set to the value of the field pointer of the first reserved field in the parameter list that contains a non-zero value (that is, 8, 9, 10, . . . , 38, 39).

22 TEST UNIT READY (00h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02	Reserved							
03								
04								
05	0	0	Reserved				0	0

22.1 About This Command

The TEST UNIT READY command allows the initiator to determine if the library is ready to accept all other commands, including motion commands. This is not a request for a library self-test, which occurs at power-on. If the library is ready to accept any command without returning Check Condition, Reservation Conflict, or Busy status, this command returns Good status.

Note: The library does not check to see if a different initiator has any elements reserved. If an element is reserved by a different initiator, the library returns Reservation Conflict status for the next command after the TEST UNIT READY command.

22.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

22.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The library returns Good status for the TEST UNIT READY command if it is able to process the command without errors. After the library determines the status to return, it does the following:

1. The library goes to the status in phase and returns either Good, Check Condition, Busy, or Reservation Conflict status to the initiator (see Section 22.4).
2. After the initiator has accepted the status byte, the library goes to the message in phase, sends the Command Complete message to the initiator, and goes to the bus free phase.

22.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the TEST UNIT READY command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when it is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE (16h) command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurs while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB.
- The command is issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- The library has experienced an unrecoverable hardware error.
- The library is not ready because the door is open, or it is operating in LCD Interface mode, a serial port mode, or a sequential mode.
- A reserved bit is set to 1 in the CDB.

Notes

23

WRITE FIRMWARE (D1h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1
01	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
02 ⋮ 05	Reserved							
06 ⋮ 09	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
10	Reserved							
11	0	0	Reserved				0	0

23.1 About This Command

The WRITE FIRMWARE command is an Exabyte-unique command that allows you to load new firmware across the SCSI bus into the library's flash EEPROM. The library processes this command when it is executing the flash EEPROM code or when it is executing the ROM boot code.

Note: If new firmware becomes available, you can obtain a copy (in machine-readable form) from your vendor.

CAUTION

Because of memory limitations, the library cannot validate the new firmware data before erasing and reprogramming the flash EEPROM. If the checksum calculated by the library does not match the embedded checksum, the library continues executing from the ROM boot code. As a result, you will only be able to issue a limited number of SCSI commands successfully: REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, READ FIRMWARE, and WRITE FIRMWARE.

To ensure that the WRITE FIRMWARE command completes successfully, calculate the checksum of the new firmware data and compare your calculated checksum to the checksum embedded in the new firmware data **before you issue the WRITE FIRMWARE command**. The checksum is the unsigned integer (16-bit) sum of BBBBh plus the first 262,143 words (16-bit) of the new firmware data. The first word after word 262,143 of the new firmware data is the embedded checksum. Ignore any overflows.

When this command is executed successfully, the following actions occur:

1. If a disconnect is allowed, the library disconnects from the SCSI bus.
2. Control is passed to the ROM boot code, if the library is executing the flash EEPROM code.
3. The flash EEPROM is erased.
4. The library reconnects to the initiator, if previously disconnected.

5. The new firmware is transferred over the SCSI bus and the flash EEPROM is programmed.
6. The flash EEPROM checksum is validated.
7. Good status is returned to the initiator and the library goes to the Bus Free phase.
8. Control is passed to the new flash EEPROM code.
9. The cartridge inventory is erased.
10. A Unit Attention condition is set for all hosts. The sense data indicates that the firmware has changed.
11. The library performs its normal power-on self-test.

Steps 1 through 8 take approximately 6 minutes.

After the flash EEPROM is programmed with new firmware, part of the nonvolatile memory is erased. The cartridge inventory is stored in this nonvolatile memory. The library re-establishes the cartridge inventory during the power-on self-test in step 11.

23.2 What You Send to the Library

Logical Unit Number – Byte 01, Bits 7 through 5

The value for this field must be 0.

Transfer Length – Bytes 06 through 09

This field specifies the number of bytes that will be transferred from the SCSI bus to the library's flash EEPROM. The only accepted value for this field is 080000h (512 KB). All other values cause Check Condition status.

23.3 How the Library Executes This Command

The steps described in this section occur after the library has been selected and has successfully received the CDB, and there are no conditions present that prevent the command from executing. Refer to Chapter 3 for a complete list of conditions that the library checks while it is receiving and after it has received the CDB from the initiator.

Figure 23-1 and Figure 23-2 show the steps that the library takes when executing the WRITE FIRMWARE command through the bus free phase. As shown in the figures, the library validates the parameters in the CDB. Table 23-1 shows the sense data reported for invalid parameters in the CDB. It also shows the sense data returned if errors are encountered erasing or programming the flash EEPROM.

Note: This section describes the normal processing of the command through the bus free phase. Additional processing may occur if the message system is enabled and the library responds to ATN with a message out phase or if parity errors are detected on the new firmware.

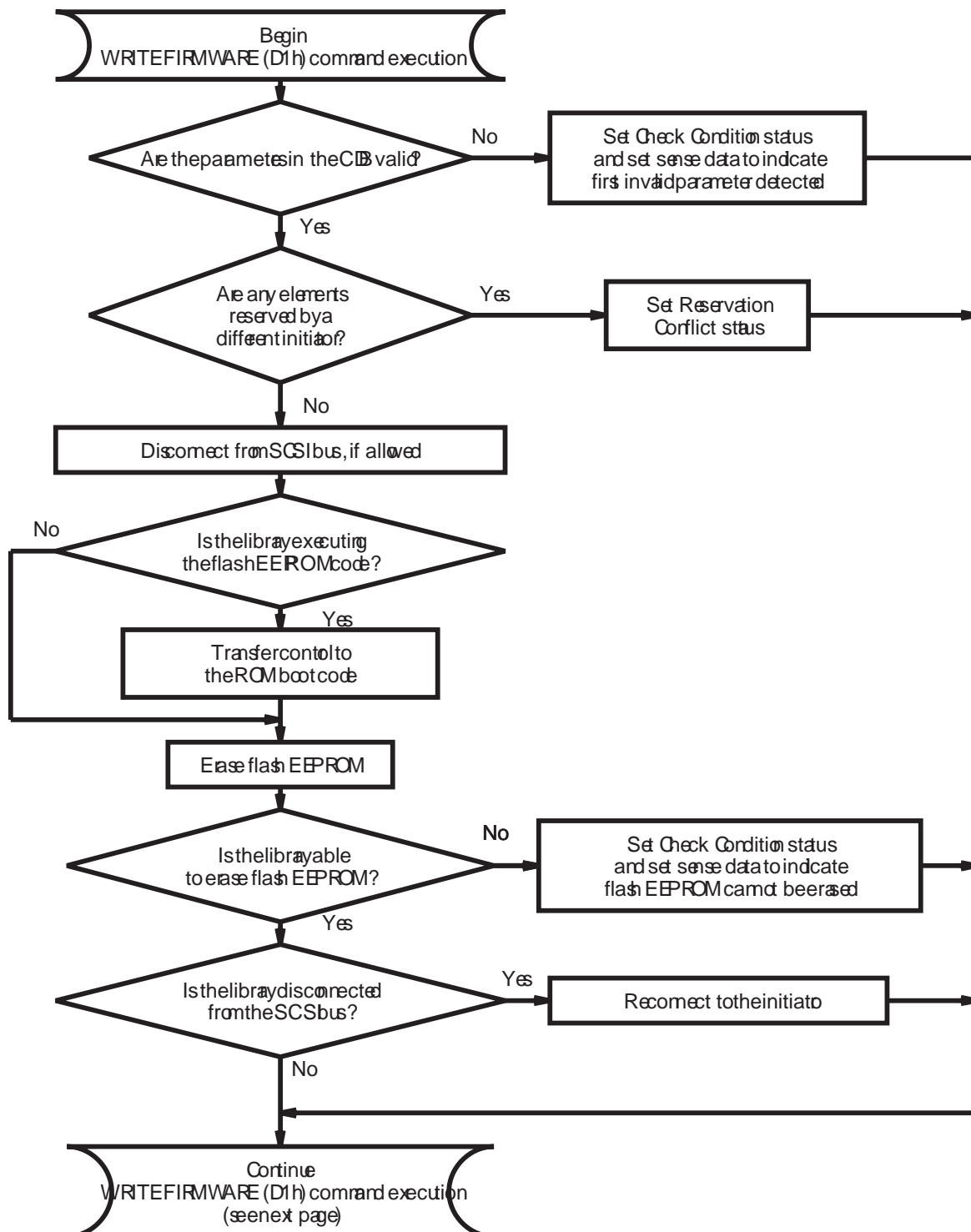


Figure 23-1 WRITE FIRMWARE command execution

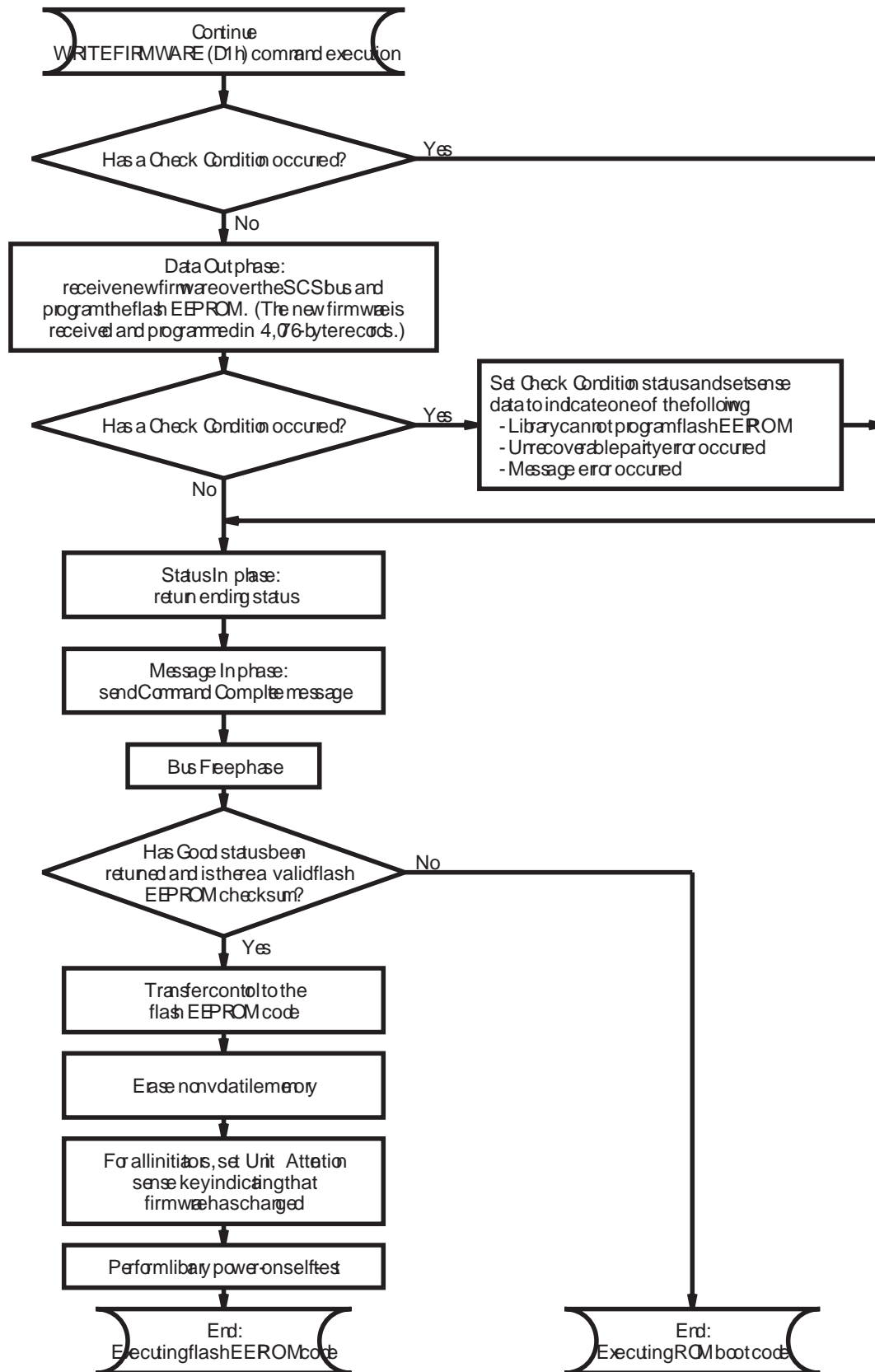


Figure 23-2 WRITE FIRMWARE command execution (continued)

23.4 Command Status

The library returns a status byte after processing the WRITE FIRMWARE command. This section describes when each type of status byte might be returned.

Good

The library returns Good status when it is able to process the command without errors.

Busy

The library returns Busy status when it is processing a command for a different initiator or when the library is in the process of aborting a motion command.

Reservation Conflict

The library returns Reservation Conflict status when it is reserved or any of its elements are reserved by a different initiator. See Chapter 19 for more information about the RESERVE command.

Check Condition

The library returns Check Condition status for the following reasons:

- The message system is enabled and a message error occurred while the library is processing the command.
- The library detects an unrecoverable parity error while receiving the CDB or firmware.
- The command was issued to an invalid LUN.
- A Unit Attention condition is pending for the initiator.
- A reserved bit was set to 1 in the CDB.
- A parameter in the CDB is invalid.
- The library is unable to erase the flash EEPROM.
- The library is unable to write zeros to the flash EEPROM.
- The library is unable to program the flash EEPROM.
- The flash EEPROM checksum is not valid after the flash EEPROM is programmed with the new firmware.

- A Console write firmware or read firmware operation is already in progress when the WRITE FIRMWARE command is received.

Table 23-1 Invalid parameters in the WRITE FIRMWARE CDB and errors in programming the flash EEPROMs

Sense Key	ASC	ASQ	SKSV Bit	C/D Bit	BPV Bit	Bit Pointer	Field Pointer	Error
4h	3Fh	80h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Flash EEPROM firmware write error: unable to erase flash EEPROM 1.
4h	3Fh	81h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Flash EEPROM firmware write error: unable to erase flash EEPROM 2.
4h	3Fh	82h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Flash EEPROM firmware write error: unable to write zeros to flash EEPROM 1.
4h	3Fh	83h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Flash EEPROM firmware write error: unable to write zeros to flash EEPROM 2.
4h	3Fh	84h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Flash EEPROM firmware write error: unable to program flash EEPROM 1.
4h	3Fh	85h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Flash EEPROM firmware write error: unable to program flash EEPROM 2.
4h	3Fh	86h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Flash EEPROM firmware write error: bad flash EEPROM checksum.
5h	1Ah	00h	1	1	0	0	0006h	Invalid transfer length.
5h	3Fh	87h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Cannot execute command because Console write firmware operation is in progress.
5h	3Fh	88h	0	0	0	0	0000h	Cannot execute command because Console read firmware operation is in progress.

A

Library Error Handling

This appendix describes error handling by the library and appropriate initiator responses when error conditions are detected during different SCSI bus phases. The errors and responses are separated into two categories:

- Errors and responses related to initiators that support only the Command Complete message
- Errors and responses related to initiators that support messages in addition to the Command Complete message

Initiators That Support Only the Command Complete Message

This section describes library error handling and appropriate initiator responses during different bus phases for initiators that support only the Command Complete message.

Error Handling During the Command Out Phase

Figure A-1 on page A-3 shows the action that the library takes during the Command Out phase when the message system is not enabled. Specifically, Figure A-1 defines the action taken when:

- **The library detects a parity error in the CDB.** (The library can detect parity errors only when parity checking is enabled.)

- **The OP Code is not supported by the library.** The library attempts to read the entire CDB even if the OP Code is not supported. The library determines the number of CDB bytes to receive based on the Group Code.

The Group Code is the upper three bits of the first CDB byte. The OP Code is the lower five bits of the first CDB byte. The Group Code specifies one of the following groups:

Group 0	Six-byte commands
Group 1	Ten-byte commands
Group 2	Ten-byte commands
Group 3	Six-byte commands
Group 4	Six-byte commands
Group 5	Twelve-byte commands
Group 6	Six-byte commands
Group 7	Ten-byte commands

Note: The library receives ten CDB bytes for the INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE command and receives twelve bytes for the READ FIRMWARE and WRITE FIRMWARE commands.

- **The library detects an invalid initiator reselection.** Refer to Condition 4 on page 3-9 for more information about an invalid initiator reselection.

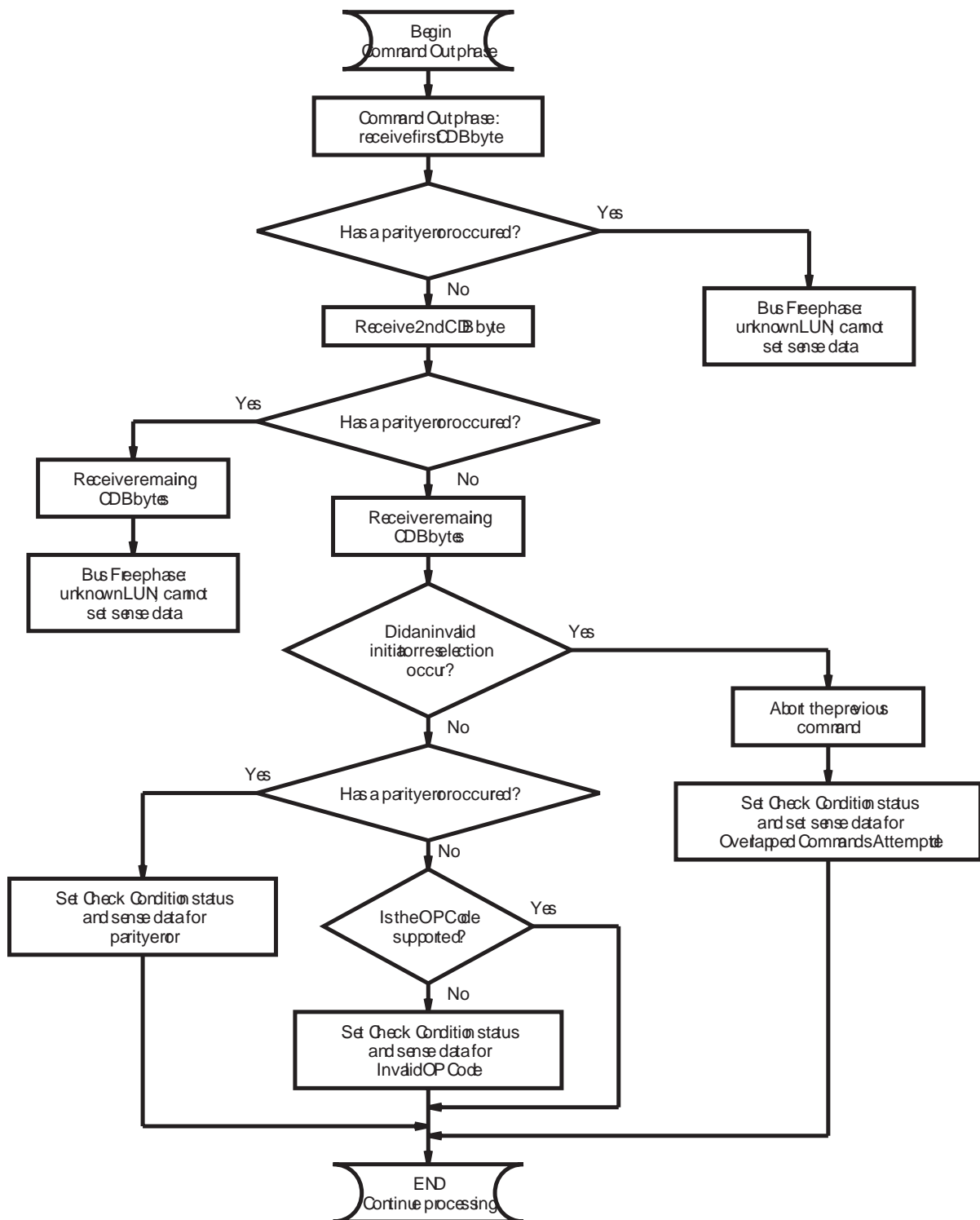


Figure A-1 Error handling during the Command Out phase (for systems that support only the Command Complete message)

Error Handling During the Data Out Phase

When parity checking is enabled, the library checks the parity of the data received during the Data Out phase. Figure A-2 describes the action that the library takes if it detects a parity error during the Data Out phase.

Note: The library can transfer 2,048 bytes at a time (if executing in the flash EEPROM) or 4,096 bytes (if executing in ROM). If the Transfer Length specified for a particular command is greater than 2,048 bytes (or 4,096 bytes if executing in ROM), the library executes the steps shown in Figure A-2 repeatedly, transferring the data in increments of the maximum buffer size until all bytes are transferred.

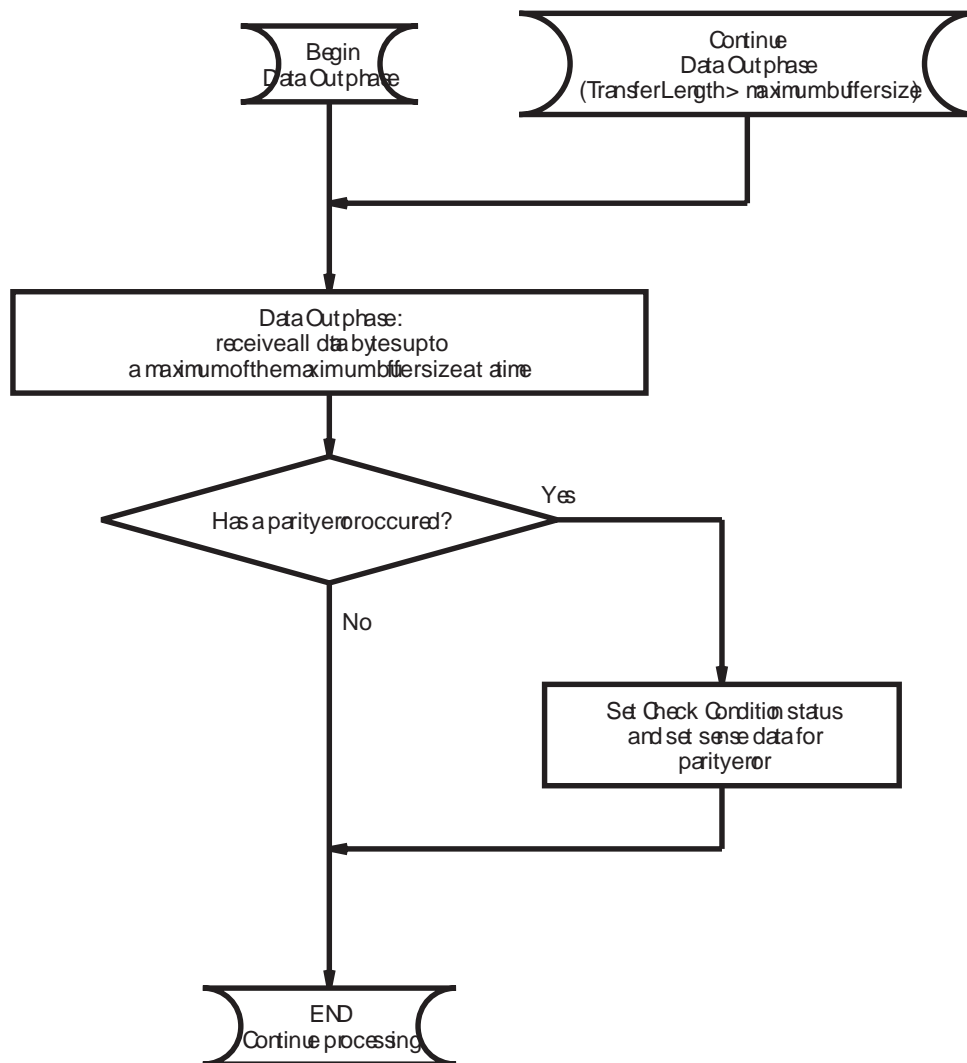


Figure A-2 Error handling during the Data Out phase (for systems that support only the Command Complete message)

Error Handling During the Data In Phase

When an initiator detects a parity error during the Data In phase, it must accept all bytes sent by the library. Unless the command was a REQUEST SENSE command, the initiator should attempt to resend the command to receive the requested data again.

If the initiator detects a parity error while receiving the data for the REQUEST SENSE command, the sense data is not recoverable.

The library preserves sense data for the initiator only until the initiator retrieves the data using the REQUEST SENSE command or until the library receives any subsequent command for the same I_T_L nexus (initiator-target-LUN connection).

If the initiator detects a parity error while receiving the data for the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h) command, the data may not be recoverable by a subsequent REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command. To receive the correct data, the initiator should reissue the SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) command before reissuing the REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS command.

Error Handling During the Status In Phase

When the initiator detects a parity error in the Status In phase, the initiator should assume that the library was returning Check Condition status. The initiator should then issue a REQUEST SENSE command and decode the sense bytes. (Even if the status byte that had the parity error was Good, Busy, or Reservation Conflict, decoding the sense data has no harmful effects on operation.)

Note: The library processes the REQUEST SENSE command even when it is busy or reserved by another initiator.

Initiators That Support Additional Messages

This section describes library error handling and appropriate initiator responses during different bus phases for initiators that support messages in addition to the Command Complete message.

Error Handling During the Message Out Phase

Figure A-3 shows the actions that the library takes during the Message Out phase. When parity checking is enabled and the library detects one or more parity errors in the message bytes it receives during a single Message Out phase, the following actions occur:

1. The library indicates its desire to retry the message by asserting the Request (REQ) signal after detecting the Attention signal has gone false and before changing to any other phase.
2. Upon detecting this condition, the initiator should resend all of the previous message bytes in the same order as previously sent during this phase.

Note: When resending more than one message byte, the initiator should assert the Attention signal at least two deskew delays before asserting the Acknowledge signal on the first byte and should maintain the Attention signal until the last byte is sent.

3. The library acts on the messages as long as it does not detect any parity errors. However, if it detects a parity error, the library ignores all remaining messages sent under one Attention condition.
4. The library continues to retry the Message Out phase as long as the Maximum Parity Retries is not exceeded and until it does not detect any parity errors or until the initiator aborts the current command or resets the library. The Maximum Parity Retries can be set by the MODE SELECT (15h) command (the factory default is 1 retry).

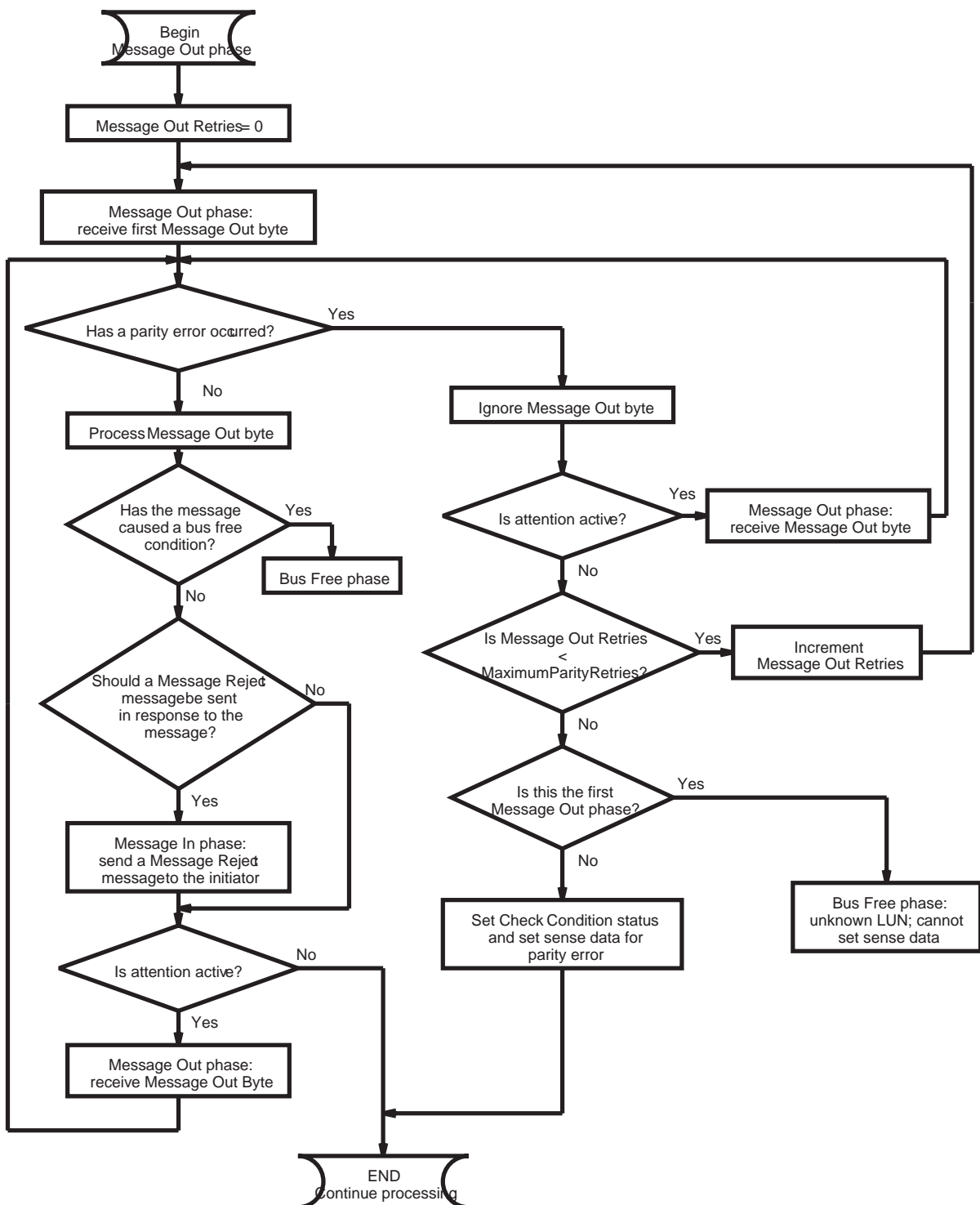


Figure A-3 Error handling during the Message Out phase (for systems that support additional messages)

Error Handling During the Message In Phase

If the initiator detects a parity error during the Message In phase, the initiator should respond by sending a Message Parity Error (09h) message to the library. Upon receiving the Message Parity Error message, the library resends the message. The library will resend the message as many times as requested by the initiator.

Error Handling During the Command Out Phase

Figure A-4 shows the action taken by the library during the Command Out phase when the message system is enabled. Specifically, Figure A-4 defines the action the library takes when:

- **The library detects a parity error in the CDB.** (Parity errors are only detected when parity checking is enabled.)
- **A Check Condition occurs while the library tries to send the Restore Data Pointers message after detecting a parity error.**
- **The OP Code is not supported by the library.** The library attempts to read the entire CDB even if the OP Code is not supported. The library determines the number of CDB bytes to receive based on the Group Code.

The Group Code is the upper three bits of the first CDB byte, and the OP Code is the lower five bits of the first CDB byte. The Group Code specifies one of the following groups:

Group 0	Six-byte commands
Group 1	Ten-byte commands
Group 2	Ten-byte commands
Group 3	Six-byte commands
Group 4	Six-byte commands
Group 5	Twelve-byte commands
Group 6	Six-byte commands
Group 7	Ten-byte commands

Note: The library receives ten CDB bytes for the Exabyte-unique command INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE and twelve bytes for the READ FIRMWARE and WRITE FIRMWARE commands.

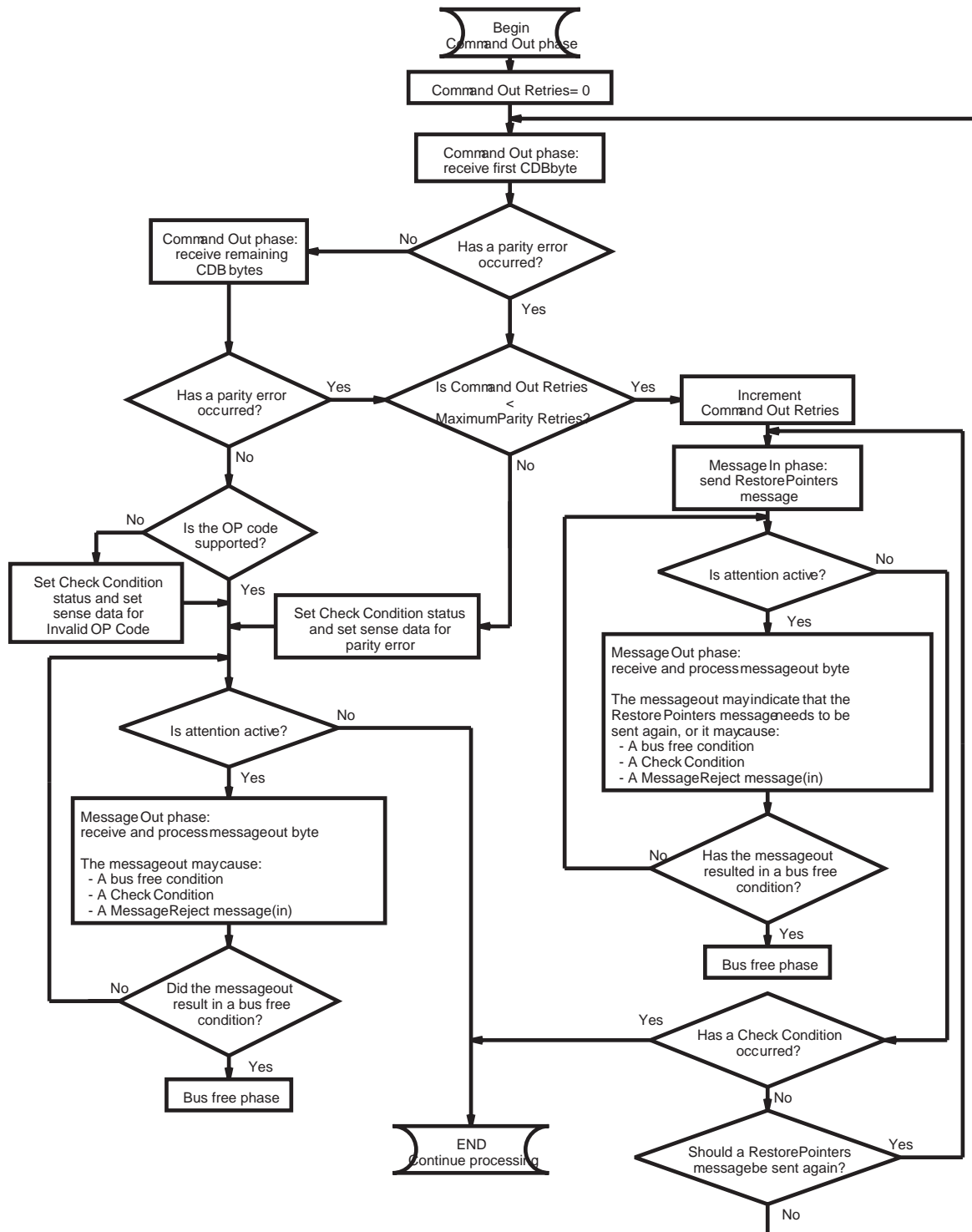


Figure A-4 Error handling during the Command Out phase (for systems that support additional messages)

Error Handling During the Data Out Phase

Figure A-5 shows the action the library takes during the Data Out phase when the message system is enabled. Specifically, Figure A-5 defines the action the library takes when:

- **The library detects parity errors in the data.** (Parity errors are only detected when parity checking is enabled.)
- **A Check Condition occurs while the library attempts to send the Restore Data Pointers message after detecting a parity error.**
- **The maximum number of parity retries is exceeded during the Data Out phase.** You can set the maximum number of parity retries with the MODE SELECT (15h) command. (The factory default is 1 retry.)

Figure A-5 also shows when the library responds to the Attention signal with a Message Out phase.

Note: The library can transfer 2,048 bytes at a time (if executing in the flash EEPROM) or 4,096 bytes (if executing in ROM). If the Transfer Length specified for a particular command is greater than 2,048 bytes (or 4,096 bytes if executing in ROM), the library executes the steps shown in Figure A-5 repeatedly, transferring the data in increments of the maximum buffer size until all bytes are transferred.

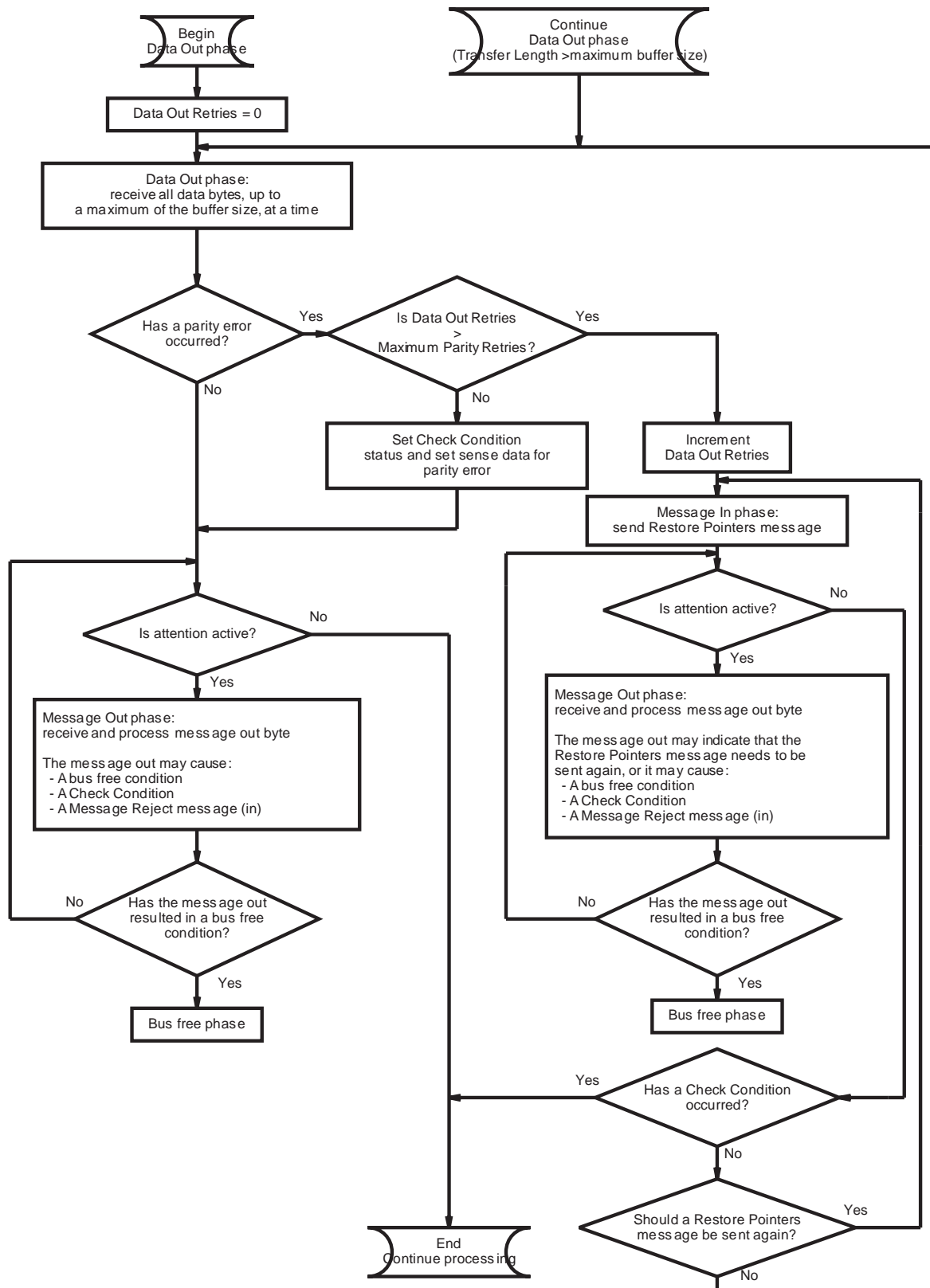


Figure A-5 Error handling during the Data Out phase (for systems that support additional messages)

Notes

B Library Message Processing

This appendix includes information about the following:

- The library's response to the Attention signal during different SCSI bus phases.
- The messages supported by the library.
- The library's response to messages from the initiator during different SCSI bus phases.

When the Library Accepts and Processes Messages

Once the initiator sends a valid Identify message during the Selection phase, the message system has been established and the library accepts and processes messages from the initiator whenever the initiator asserts the Attention signal.

Table B-1 shows when the library responds to the Attention signal for each SCSI bus phase.

Table B-1 When the library responds to the Attention signal

If the initiator asserts the Attention signal during this phase...	The library responds...
Selection	Immediately following the selection.
Command	At the end of the Command phase, after all CDB bytes have been received.
Data In	After all bytes have been sent to the initiator.
Data Out	After all bytes from the initiator have been received.
Status In	After the status byte has been sent to the initiator.
Message In	After the message has been sent to the initiator.

SCSI Messages Supported by the Library

As described in Chapter 2, the message system allows communication between an initiator and the library for physical path management. Messages allow the initiator and the library to manage error detection, data transfer retries, and the data path. One or more messages may be sent during a single message phase.

The library supports the SCSI messages listed in Table B-2. This section describes each of these messages in more detail. The messages are described in hex code order.

Table B-2 Messages supported by the library

Hex Value	Message	Direction	
		In (Library to initiator)	Out (Initiator to library)
00h	Command Complete	✓	
01h	Extended Messages: Synchronous Data Transfer Request (01h) Wide Data Transfer Request (03h)	✓	✓
03h	Restore Pointers	✓	
04h	Disconnect	✓	
05h	Initiator Detected Error		✓
06h	Abort		✓
07h	Message Reject	✓	✓
08h	No Operation		✓
09h	Message Parity Error		✓
0Ch	Bus Device Reset		✓
80h or C0h	Identify	✓	✓

Command Complete Message In (00h)

The library sends the Command Complete message to the initiator to indicate that the execution of the command has completed and that valid status has been sent to the initiator. After the library successfully sends this message, the bus goes to the Bus Free phase.

Extended Messages In/Out (01h)

The library supports the following extended messages:

- Synchronous Data Transfer Request
- Wide Data Transfer Request

Synchronous Data Transfer Request

The Synchronous Data Transfer Request message is used to negotiate synchronous data transfer agreements. If the initiator wants to transfer data synchronously, it must negotiate a synchronous data transfer agreement with the target before transferring data.

The library does not support synchronous data transfer. When it receives a Synchronous Data Transfer Request message from the initiator, it returns a Synchronous Data Transfer Request message with a REQ/ACK offset equal to zero. This indicates that the library requires asynchronous data transfer. The successful exchange of Synchronous Data Transfer Request messages implies an agreement to asynchronous data transfer.

The format of the Synchronous Data Transfer Request Message is as follows:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
01	Extended Message Length (03h)							
02	Extended Message Code (01h)							
03	Transfer Period Factor							
04	REQ/ACK Offset							

Byte 01 – Extended Message Length The value for this field is 03h, indicating that there are three additional message bytes to be transferred, not including this byte.

Byte 02 – Extended Message Code The value for this field is 01h, indicating that the extended message is a Synchronous Data Transfer Request.

Byte 03 – Transfer Period Factor The value for this field is multiplied by four to determine the value of the transfer period. The library does not use this field. Instead, it returns the value received from the initiator.

Byte 04 – REQ/ACK Offset The REQ/ACK offset is the maximum number of REQ pulses allowed to be outstanding before the leading edge of the corresponding ACK pulse is received by the library. The library returns 00h for this field, indicating that the library requires asynchronous data transfer.

Wide Data Transfer Request

The Wide Data Transfer Request Message is used to negotiate the width of the data path for data transfers between the library and the initiator. The width applies to data phases only (Data In and Data Out); all other information transfers use an eight-bit data path.

The library does not support wide data transfers. When it receives a Wide Data Transfer Request message from the initiator, it returns a Wide Data Transfer Request message with a transfer width exponent of 0 (8-bit transfer width). The successful exchange of Wide Data Transfer Request messages implies an agreement to an 8-bit data transfer width.

The agreement can be terminated immediately after the negotiation if either device asserts the Attention signal and then sends a Message Reject message.

The format of the Wide Data Transfer Request Message is as follows:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
01	Extended Message Length (02h)							
02	Extended Message Code (03h)							
03	Transfer Width Exponent							

Byte 01 – Extended Message Length The value for this field is 02h, indicating that there are two additional message bytes to be transferred, not including this byte.

Byte 02 – Extended Message Code The value for this field is 03h, indicating that the extended message is a Wide Data Transfer Request.

Byte 03 – Transfer Width Exponent This field determines the width of the data path for data transfers. The transfer width is 2 raised to this value in bytes. The library always returns 00h for this field. This value indicates that the library supports an 8-bit data transfer width only: $2^0 = 1$ byte (8 bits) wide.

Restore Pointers Message In (03h)

The library sends the Restore Pointers message to direct the initiator to copy the most recently saved command, data, and status pointers for the I/O process to the corresponding active pointers. The command and status pointers are restored to the beginning of the present command and status areas. The data pointer is restored to the value at the beginning of the data area.

The library also sends the Restore Pointers message after receiving an Initiator Detected Error message following either the Status phase or Data In phase, or after detecting a parity error during the Command phase or Data Out phase. After the library successfully sends the Restore Pointers message to the initiator, the library restarts the Command, Data In, Data Out, or Status phase from the beginning.

Disconnect Message In (04h)

The library sends the Disconnect message to inform the initiator that it is about to break the present physical path and that a later reconnection is required to complete the current operation. The library disconnects by releasing the BSY signal.

This message does not cause the initiator to save the data pointer.

Note: If a catastrophic error condition has occurred during the current command, the library does not send the Disconnect message or the Command Complete message, but instead goes immediately to the Bus Free phase.

Initiator Detected Error Out (05h)

The initiator sends the Initiator Detected Error message to inform the library that an error has occurred that does not preclude the library from retrying that operation. The source of the error may either be related to previous activities on the SCSI bus or may be internal to the initiator and unrelated to any previous SCSI bus activities.

Note: Refer to Table B-3 on page B-11 for information about how the library handles the Initiator Detected Error message during different bus phases.

Abort Message Out (06h)

The initiator sends the Abort message to the library to clear a previously requested process for the I_T_L nexus (initiator-target-LUN connection). The library goes to the Bus Free phase immediately after it receives the Abort message. Additional action depends on the LUN, if established, as described below:

- If the library receives the Abort message after the Identify message, an I_T_L nexus is established. If the LUN is valid, all pending data and status for the issuing initiator is cleared and any previously requested process by that initiator is aborted. If the LUN is invalid, no additional action is taken.
- If the library receives the Abort message before the Identify message, only an I_T nexus is established. The library goes bus free, but no pending I/O processes will abort.

Any pending data, status, and command processing for any other initiator is unaffected by this message. For example, if the library is disconnected while processing a command for a different initiator, the processing of that command is unaffected by the Abort message.

The library aborts motion commands as soon as reasonably possible.

Note: Refer to Table B-4 on page B-12 for information about how the library checks for the Abort message and when it aborts the indicated motion command after receiving the Abort message.

Message Reject Message In/Out (07h)

The Message Reject message is sent by either the initiator or the library to indicate that the last message it received was inappropriate or not supported.

Note: Refer to Table B-5 on page B-15 for information about how the library handles the Message Reject message during different bus phases.

No Operation Out (08h)

The initiator sends the No Operation message in response to the library's request for a message when the initiator does not currently have a valid message to send.

The library does not take any action in response to the No Operation message; it accepts this message and continues processing the current command.

Message Parity Error Out (09h)

The initiator sends the Message Parity Error message to the library to indicate that the last message byte it received had a parity error.

Note: Refer to Table B-6 on page B-16 for information about how the library handles the Message Parity Error message during different bus phases.

Bus Device Reset Message Out (0Ch)

The initiator sends the Bus Device Reset message to direct the library to clear all I/O processes. This message forces a soft reset condition for the library.

The library goes immediately to the Bus Free phase once it successfully receives this message. As with a SCSI bus reset or power-on reset, the library sets a sense key of Unit Attention (6h) for all initiators.

Identify Message In/Out (80h or C0h)

The Identify message is sent by either the initiator or the library to establish an I_T_L nexus (initiator-target-logical unit number connection) and to enable the message system.

The initiator can send one or more Identify messages during a connection. The initiator sends more than one Identify message during a connection to change the disconnect privilege. When the library processes commands that require a lengthy amount of time, it disconnects and reconnects only once. Therefore, it is only relevant for the initiator to change the disconnect privilege before the Status In phase (for example: during the first Message Out phase, after the Command phase, or after a Disconnect message in).

The initiator may not send additional Identify messages to the library with a different LUN specified.

Note: For more information about how the library responds to the Identify message during different SCSI bus phases, refer to Tables B-7 through B-10.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
00	Identify	DiscPriv	LUNTAR	Reserved		LUN		

Bit 7 – Identify

This bit must be set to 1 to indicate this is the Identify message.

Bit 6 – DiscPriv (Disconnect Privilege)

This bit indicates whether the initiator supports the disconnect privilege, as follows:

- 0 – Disconnect is not allowed.
- 1 – Disconnect is allowed.

The library always sets this bit to 0. Only initiators indicate if they support disconnect.

Bit 5 – LUNTAR (Logical Unit Target)

This bit indicates the LUNs that you can access on this device. This bit must be set to 0 to indicate that the Identify message is directed to a logical unit.

Bits 2 through 0 – LUN (Logical Unit Number)

The only supported logical unit number for the library is 0.

Notes:

- If the LUN field is set to a value other than 0, the library returns Check Condition status to commands other than INQUIRY and REQUEST SENSE, and the sense data is set to indicate that the logical unit is not supported.
- If an INQUIRY command is directed to a LUN other than 0, the first byte of inquiry data indicates that the library is not capable of supporting a physical device on the requested LUN.
- If a REQUEST SENSE command is directed to a LUN other than 0, the sense data returned indicates that the logical unit is not supported.

How the Library Responds to Messages

The following sections explain the action that the library takes in response to each message it receives from the initiator. The tables in this section show the following:

- The bus phase that was active just before the library received the indicated message
- The action that the library takes in response to the indicated message

It is possible for the library to return Check Condition status in response to a message error. The library sends a Message Reject message instead of Check Condition status if the requested command has already been completed. A command is considered complete once the library has sent or has attempted to send ending status.

Note: For more information about command status, see Chapter 2.

Response to Unsupported Messages Out

When the library receives messages that are not supported, it sends a Message Reject message after the first invalid message byte and then continues processing the current command.

Response to Initiator Detected Error Message

Table B-3 shows how the library handles the Initiator Detected Error message during different bus phases.

Table B-3 Handling of Initiator Detected Error message

If the library receives an Initiator Detected Error message during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Command	Returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows: Sense Key = Aborted Command (Bh) ASC = Initiator Detected Error (48h) ASCQ = 0
Data out	
Data in	Sends a Restore Pointers message, and resends the data or status.
Status	
Message out	<p>If the library has completed the command and attempted to return status, it:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a Message Reject message. • Does not set sense data since the command was already processed. <p>Otherwise, the library returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows: Sense Key = Aborted Command (Bh) ASC = Initiator Detected Error (48h) ASCQ = 0</p>
Message in Msg Reject	Sends another Message Reject message.
Message in Cmd Complete Disconnect Restore Ptrs Identify	Sends a Message Reject message, and resends the last message in.

Response to Abort Message

Table B-4 describes when the library checks for the Abort message and when it aborts the indicated motion command after receiving the Abort message.

Note: Until it completely aborts a motion command, the library terminates all commands other than INQUIRY (12h) or REQUEST SENSE (03h) with Busy status.

Table B-4 When the library aborts motion commands

When processing this command...	The library checks for the Abort message...	...and performs the following actions
INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS and INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH RANGE	Before checking each element.	If the library receives the Abort message before it has checked the next element, it aborts the operation immediately. If it receives the Abort message while it is checking an element, it aborts the operation after checking that element.
MOVE MEDIUM	Before picking the cartridge and before placing the cartridge.	If the library receives the Abort message before starting the pick operation, it does not pick the cartridge. If it receives the Abort message after starting the pick operation but before starting the place operation, it returns the cartridge to its initial location. If it receives the Abort message after placing the cartridge into its destination, it does not return the cartridge to its initial location.
POSITION TO ELEMENT	Before positioning the CHM.	If the library receives the Abort message after beginning to move the CHM, it completes the operation and does not return the CHM to its original position.

When processing this command...	The library checks for the Abort message...	...and performs the following actions
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Self Test</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Before beginning to home the gripper fingers. • Before beginning to home the CHM. • Before beginning to cycle the short axis. • Before beginning to cycle the long axis. 	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before beginning to home the gripper fingers, it aborts the self test immediately. If it receives the Abort message after beginning to home the gripper fingers, it homes the gripper fingers once, then aborts the self test.</p> <p>If the library receives the Abort message before beginning to home the CHM, it aborts the self test immediately. If it receives the Abort message after beginning to home the CHM, it homes the CHM once, then aborts the self test.</p> <p>If the library receives the Abort message before beginning to cycle the short axis, it aborts the self test immediately. If it receives the Abort message after beginning to cycle the short axis, it cycles the short axis once, then aborts the self test.</p> <p>If the library receives the Abort message before beginning to cycle the long axis, it aborts the self test immediately. If it receives the Abort message after beginning to cycle the long axis, it cycles the long axis once, then aborts the self test.</p>
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 80h: Home gripper fingers</p>	<p>Before beginning to home the gripper fingers.</p>	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before beginning to home the gripper fingers, it aborts the operation and does not home the gripper fingers. If it receives the Abort message after beginning to home the gripper fingers, it completes the operation and homes the gripper fingers.</p>
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 81h: Home CHM</p>	<p>Before beginning to home the CHM.</p>	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before starting to home the CHM, it aborts the operation and does not home the CHM. If it receives the Abort message after starting to home the CHM, it completes the operation and homes the CHM.</p>

When processing this command...	The library checks for the Abort message...	...and performs the following actions
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 82h: Cycle pick/place cartridges</p>	<p>Before picking the cartridge for each pick/place cycle.</p>	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before picking a cartridge, it aborts the operation. If it receives the Abort message while picking or placing a cartridge, it completes that pick/place cycle, then aborts the operation.</p>
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 83h: Cycle gripper fingers</p>	<p>Before each cycle of the gripper.</p>	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before starting a gripper cycle, it aborts the operation and does not cycle the grippers. If it receives the Abort message after starting a gripper cycle, it completes that cycle, then aborts the operation.</p>
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 84h: Cycle short axis</p>	<p>Before each cycle of the short axis.</p>	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before starting a cycle of the short axis, it aborts the operation and does not cycle the short axis. If it receives the Abort message after starting a cycle of the short axis, it completes that cycle, then aborts the operation.</p>
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 85h: Cycle long axis</p>	<p>Before each cycle of the long axis.</p>	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before starting a cycle of the long axis, it aborts the operation and does not cycle the long axis. If it receives the Abort message after starting a cycle of the long axis, it completes that cycle, then aborts the operation.</p>
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 86h: Cycle drum axis</p>	<p>Before each cycle of the drum axis.</p>	<p>(EXB-220 only.) If the library receives the Abort message before starting a cycle of the drum axis, it aborts the operation and does not cycle the drum axis. If it receives the Abort message after starting a cycle of the drum axis, it completes that cycle, then aborts the operation.</p>
<p>SEND DIAGNOSTIC</p> <p>Page Code 87h: Cycle door solenoids</p>	<p>Before each cycle of the door solenoids.</p>	<p>If the library receives the Abort message before starting a cycle of the door solenoids, it aborts the operation and does not cycle the door solenoids. If it receives the Abort message after starting a cycle of the door solenoids, it completes that cycle, then aborts the operation.</p>

Response to Message Reject Message

Table B-5 shows how the library handles the Message Reject message during different bus phases.

Table B-5 How the library handles a Message Reject message

If the library receives a Message Reject during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Command	Sends a Message Reject message.
Data out	
Data in	
Status	
Message out	
Message in Cmd Complete	Goes to the Bus Free phase.
Message in Disconnect	Does not disconnect; continues processing the command.
Message in Restore Ptrs	<p>If the message was sent after the Status phase, the library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a Message Reject message. • Does not change sense data since the command is complete. • Continues to the Command Complete message. <p>If the message was sent after the Command phase or Data Out phase, the library returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows:</p> <p>Sense Key = Aborted Command (Bh) ASC = SCSI Parity Error (47h) ASCQ = 0</p> <p>If the message was sent after the Data In phase, the library returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows:</p> <p>Sense Key = Aborted Command ASC = Initiator Detected Error Message Received (48h) ASCQ = 0</p>
Message in Msg Reject	Sends a Message Reject message.
Message in Identify	<p>Goes bus free immediately and sets sense data as follows:</p> <p>Sense Key = Aborted Command (Bh) ASC = Reselect Failure (45h) ASCQ = 0</p>

Response to Message Parity Error Message

Table B-6 shows how the library handles the Message Parity Error message during different bus phases.

Table B-6 Handling of Message Parity Error message

If the library receives a Message Parity Error message during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Command	Goes bus free immediately and sets sense data as follows: Sense Key = Aborted Command (Bh) ASC = Message Error (43h) ASCQ = 0
Data out	
Data in	
Message out	
Status	
Message in Cmd Complete Disconnect Msg Reject Restore Ptrs Identify	Sends the last message again.

Response to Identify Message Out

Tables B-7 through B-10 show how the library handles the Identify message from the initiator during different bus phases. The tables include information about how the library responds to the following:

- A valid first Identify message
- A subsequent Identify message with the same LUN as the first message
- A subsequent Identify message with a different LUN
- An Identify message with reserved bits 3, 4, or 5 set

Table B-7 Library action when the first Identify message is valid

If the library receives a valid Identity message during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Select	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Processes messages. Sets disconnect privilege to the value of DiscPriv (bit 6) of the Identify message out. Sets the LUN field to the LUN specified in the Identify message out.

Table B-8 Handling of valid Identify message with the same LUN as for the first Identify message

If the library receives an Identify message during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Select	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sets disconnect privilege to the value of DiscPriv (bit 6) of the Identify message out. Continues processing the command as before.
Command	
Data out	
Data in	
Status	
Message out	
Message in Cmd Complete	Goes bus free.
Message in Disconnect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sets disconnect privilege to the value of DiscPriv (bit 6) of the Identify message out. If DiscPriv is 0, the library does not disconnect and continues processing as before. Otherwise, goes bus free.
Message in Msg Reject Restore Ptrs Identify	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sets disconnect privilege to the value of DiscPriv (bit 6) of the Identify message out. Continues processing the command as before.

Table B-9 Handling of invalid Identify message with different LUN

If the library receives an Identify message during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Command	<p>Goes bus free immediately and sets sense data as follows:</p> <p>Sense Key = Aborted Command (Bh)</p> <p>ASC = Message Error (43h)</p> <p>ASCQ = 0</p>
Data out	
Data in	
Status	
Message out	
Message in Cmd Complete Disconnect Msg Reject Restore Ptrs Identify	

Table B-10 Handling of invalid Identify message with reserved bits 3, 4, or 5 set

If the library receives an Identify message during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Select	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows: Sense Key = Illegal Request (5h) ASC = Invalid Bits in Identify message (3Dh) ASCQ = 0 Skips the Command phase and goes directly to the Status phase.
Command	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows: Sense Key = Illegal Request (5h) ASC = Invalid Bits in Identify message (3Dh) ASCQ = 0 Skips any data phase and goes directly to the Status phase.
Data out	
Data in	
Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sends a Message Reject message. Does not set sense data since the command is complete. Continues to the Message In phase to send the Command Complete message.

If the library receives an Identify message during this bus phase...	The library does this...
Message out	<p>If the command is complete and the library has attempted to return status, it:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a Message Reject message. • Does not set sense data, since the command is complete. <p>Otherwise, it returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows:</p> <p>Sense Key = Illegal Request (5h) ASC = Invalid Bits in the Identify message (3Dh) ASCQ = 0</p>
Message in Cmd Complete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a Message Reject message. • Does not set illegal sense data since the command was already processed. • Goes to the Bus Free phase.
Message in Disconnect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not disconnect. • Aborts the current operation. • Returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows: Sense Key = Illegal Request (5h) ASC = Invalid Bits in the Identify message (3Dh) ASCQ = 0 • Goes directly to the Status phase.
Message in Restore Ptrs Msg Reject Identify	<p>If the command is complete and the library has attempted to return status, the library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sends a Message Reject message. • Does not set sense data since the command was already processed. <p>Otherwise, the library returns Check Condition status and sets sense data as follows:</p> <p>Sense Key = Illegal Request ASC = Invalid Bits in the Identify message (3Dh) ASCQ = 0</p>

Notes

C LCD Character Set

Table C-1 on the next page shows the hexadecimal values that correspond to ASCII characters on the LCD. Use this table as a reference when you enter LCD characters for the Display Line fields in the MODE SELECT (15h) command.

Table C-1 Hexadecimal values for LCD characters

Lower 4-bit \ Upper 4-bit		0000	0010	0011	0100	0101	0110	0111	1010	1011	1100	1101	1110	1111
x x x x 0000	CG RAM (1)													
x x x x 0001	(2)													
x x x x 0010	(3)													
x x x x 0011	(4)													
x x x x 0100	(5)													
x x x x 0101	(6)													
x x x x 0110	(7)													
x x x x 0111	(8)													
x x x x 1000	(1)													
x x x x 1001	(2)													
x x x x 1010	(3)													
x x x x 1011	(4)													
x x x x 1100	(5)													
x x x x 1101	(6)													
x x x x 1110	(7)													
x x x x 1111	(8)													

D Error Codes

This appendix lists the ASCs (Additional Sense Codes) and ASCQs (Additional Sense Code Qualifiers) for library errors. The ASCs and ASCQs are associated with the sense keys returned by the library in response to a REQUEST SENSE command (see Chapter 17). The error descriptions are listed in order by ASC and ASCQ for each of the sense keys.

Not Ready (Sense Key 2h)

During a Not Ready condition, the library returns Check Condition status in response to each motion command until the Not Ready condition is removed. During this time, the sense key is set to Not Ready and the ASC and ASCQ are set to codes specifying why the library is not ready. All commands other than motion commands perform normally. Table D-1 lists Not Ready (2h) error conditions.

Table D-1 ASC and ASCQ values for the Not Ready (2h) sense key

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	Description
04h	01h	The library is performing an initialization after a reset or the door was closed.
	83h	The front door is open.
	84h	The library is executing ROM boot code and cannot execute the command.
	89h	The library is in serial port mode.
	8Dh	The library is in LCD Interface mode.
	8Eh	The library is in sequential mode.

Hardware Error (Sense Key 4h)

The library returns a sense key of Hardware Error (4h) when a hardware-related error occurs. After a Hardware Error occurs, the library will not accept motion commands. For each additional motion command, the library returns the same Hardware Error. For the TEST UNIT READY (00h) command, the library also responds with a Hardware Error sense key. All other commands are executed normally.

Table D-2 lists Hardware Error (4h) error conditions and indicates the LCD code that appears on the operator panel when each error occurs. The table also provides corrective actions for each error.

Table D-2 ASC and ASCQ values for the Hardware Error (4h) sense key

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	LCD code	Description	Corrective action
15h	80h	10	The CHM dropped a cartridge.	If the cartridge label was removed, make sure that there is no label adhesive remaining on the cartridge. Adhesive can cause the cartridge to stick to the CHM grippers. After removing the adhesive, put the cartridge back in the magazine if you know where it belongs and reset the library. If the label was not removed, contact your vendor. Caution: Do not try to put the cartridge back in the gripper.
	81h	14	The CHM could not pick a cartridge because of mechanical problems.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure there is nothing blocking the CHM or the tape drives. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	83h	13	The CHM could not place a cartridge because of mechanical problems.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the CHM along its short axis. Make sure that a cartridge is not already loaded in the tape drive. Make sure that flap on the cartridge is closed. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
		38	The CHM could not load the cartridge into the tape drive because of mechanical problems.	

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	LCD code	Description	Corrective action
15h (cont.)	84h	25	The CHM stalled while trying to pick a cartridge from a tape drive.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the gripper. If the cartridge is partially protruding from the tape drive, the drive door may be jammed. If so, try gently removing the cartridge with your fingers. If necessary, push the cartridge back into the tape drive and press the eject button on the drive carrier faceplate. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library.
	85h	26	The gripper could not open.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the gripper or the CHM's path along the short axis. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If there are no obstructions and the error persists, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	86h	19	The CHM could not successfully pick from a full cartridge slot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the gripper. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
3Bh	81h	71	Firmware error.	Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, contact your vendor. You may be asked to supply a diagnostic listing, and you may need new firmware.

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	LCD code	Description	Corrective action
3Fh	80h	—	The library is unable to erase flash EEPROM 1.	Contact your vendor.
	81h	—	The library is unable to erase flash EEPROM 2.	
	82h	—	The library is unable to write zeros to flash EEPROM 1.	
	83h	—	The library is unable to write zeros to flash EEPROM 2.	
	84h	—	The library is unable to program flash EEPROM 1.	
	85h	—	The library is unable to program flash EEPROM 2.	
	86h	—	The flash EEPROM checksum was bad.	
40h	88h	72	The front door is open or the door solenoid is malfunctioning.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Close and lock the door If the error still appears, make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the solenoid may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor
	91h	21	A gripper error occurred.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the gripper. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	92h	22	A gripper motion took longer than the maximum time allocated for it. When motion functions do not complete in the allocated time, current to the servo motors is shut off.	
	A0h	30	The CHM could not move along the short axis.	Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the gripper or the CHM's path along the short axis. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If there are no obstructions and the error persists, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	A1h	31	The CHM could not return to the home position along the short axis.	

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	LCD code	Description	Corrective action
40h (cont.)	A3h	36	The library could not reset the servo chip for the short axis.	Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the controller card may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	A5h	73	The CHM could not reach its destination on the short axis.	Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the CHM's path. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If there are no obstructions and the error persists, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	B0h	40	The CHM could not move along the long axis.	Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the CHM's path. Also, make sure the axis belt is intact.
	B1h	41	The CHM could not return to the home position on the long axis.	Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists and there are no obstructions and the belt is intact, the long axis motor or the controller card may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	B3h	46	The library could not reset the servo chip for the long axis.	Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the controller card may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	B5h	70	The CHM could not reach its destination on the long axis.	Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the CHM's path. Also, make sure the axis belt is intact. Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists and there are no obstructions and the belt is intact, the long axis motor or the controller card may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	C0h	50	The drum could not move on its axis. (EXB-220 only)	Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the drum's rotation. If there are no obstructions, the drum motor assembly may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	LCD code	Description	Corrective action
40h (cont.)	C1h	51	The library could not determine the home position on the drum. (EXB-220 only).	The drum home sensor detects an interrupter flag that is part of the rotor. Check to make sure that the interrupter flag is not bent. If it is damaged, the drum may need to be replaced. If it is not damaged, the drum home sensor may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	E0h	67	Controller card error.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If the bar code scanner is present, this error appears on the Label Info screen. ▪ Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, the controller card may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
	E5h	76	The CHM could not reach its destination along the long axis.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the CHM's path. Also, make sure the axis belt is intact. ▪ Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists and there are no obstructions and the belt is intact, the long axis motor or the controller card may need to be replaced.
	F1h	101	The CHM could not move along the short axis before a drum motion.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Open the door and look for anything that might be obstructing the CHM's path. Also, make sure the axis belt is intact. ▪ Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists and there are no obstructions and the belt is intact, the CHM may need to be replaced. Contact your vendor.
80h	01h	17	There was a cartridge in the gripper during a power up, before a cartridge move, or before a diagnostic test.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Remove the cartridge and put it back in the cartridge magazine if you know where it belongs. ▪ Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library.
	07h	90	The drive blank configuration is invalid.	This error applies to earlier models of the library. If you operate the library with one tape drive, you must have a drive blank installed in the empty slot.

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	LCD code	Description	Corrective action
80h (cont.)	09h	108	The installed boot ROM is not compatible with the flash EEPROM code.	You do not have the correct boot ROM for the firmware you are trying to run in your library. Contact your vendor.
84h	00h	75	Firmware error.	Make sure the library and tape drives are not being used by any host, then reset the library. If the error persists, contact your vendor. You may be asked to supply a diagnostic listing, and you may need new firmware.

Illegal Request (Sense Key 5h)

Table D-3 lists Illegal Request (5h) error conditions.

Table D-3 ASC and ASCQ values for the Illegal Request (5h) sense key

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	Description
1Ah	00h	The parameter list length was not valid.
20h	00h	The operation code (OP code) for the command descriptor block was invalid.
21h	01h	There was an invalid element address specified in the command descriptor block.
24h	00h	There were invalid fields in the command descriptor block.
25h	00h	The logical unit number specified in the Identify message or in the command descriptor block is not zero.
26h	00h	There was an invalid field in the parameter list.
	02h	There was an invalid parameter in the parameter list.
3Bh	0Dh	The destination element was occupied for a MOVE MEDIUM command.
	0Eh	The source element was empty for a MOVE MEDIUM command.
	90h	The source cartridge is loaded inside the tape drive and is not accessible.
3Dh	00h	There were invalid bits in the Identify message. Either one of the reserved bits was nonzero or the LUNTAR field was nonzero.
3Fh	87h	Cannot execute a READ FIRMWARE or WRITE FIRMWARE command; the console's write firmware operation is in progress.
	88h	Cannot execute a READ FIRMWARE or WRITE FIRMWARE command; the console's read firmware operation is in progress.
53h	02h	Either the library door cannot be opened because the operation was prevented with a PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command.
80h	03h	The source cartridge magazine is not installed.
	04h	The destination cartridge magazine is not installed.
	05h	The source tape drive is not installed.
	06h	The destination tape drive is not installed.
85h	01h	Configuration problem: no bar code scanner installed.

Unit Attention (Sense Key 6h)

The library does not stack Unit Attention conditions. Whenever there are two or more Unit Attention conditions, the library reports only the last one encountered. A Unit Attention condition remains in effect for a particular initiator until that initiator clears it.

If the library has not returned Check Condition status for the Unit Attention condition generated, the library responds in the following manner:

- In response to a REQUEST SENSE command, the library reports a sense key of Unit Attention (the ASC and ASCQ bytes provide additional information about the condition). Then, the library clears the Unit Attention condition.
- In response to an INQUIRY command, the library performs the INQUIRY command but does not clear the Unit Attention condition.
- In response to any other command, the library returns Check Condition status for the command. The command is not performed and the Unit Attention condition is not cleared.

If the library has already returned Check Condition for the Unit Attention condition, the library responds in the following manner:

- In response to a REQUEST SENSE command, the library reports a sense key of Unit Attention (the ASC and ASCQ bytes provide additional information about the condition). Then, the library clears the Unit Attention condition.
- In response to an INQUIRY command, the library performs the INQUIRY command but does not clear the Unit Attention condition.
- In response to any other command, the library clears the Unit Attention and associated sense data. Then, the library performs the requested command.

Table D-4 lists Unit Attention (6h) error conditions.

Table D-4 ASC and ASCQ values for the Unit Attention (6h) sense key

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	Description
28h	00h	The library's door was opened and then closed.
	89h	The library was placed in SCSI Interface mode after it was operating in one of the serial port modes.
	8Dh	The library was placed in SCSI Interface mode after it was operating in LCD Interface mode.
	8Eh	The library was placed in SCSI interface mode after it was operating in one of the sequential modes.
29h	00h	A power-on, SCSI bus reset, or Bus Device Reset message occurred.
2Ah	01h	Mode parameters have been changed. Issue a MODE SENSE (1Ah) command to determine what the new mode parameters are.
3Fh	01h	New firmware was loaded.

Aborted Command (Sense Key Bh)

Table D-5 lists Unit Attention (Bh) error conditions.

Table D-5 ASC and ASCQ values for the Aborted Command (Bh) sense key

ASC (byte 12)	ASCQ (byte 13)	Description
43h	00h	The library received a message at an invalid time.
45h	00h	A reselect failure occurred. The host rejected the Identify message sent by the library after the library reselected the host.
47h	00h	Either the message system was disabled and the library discovered a parity error on the SCSI bus, or the message system was enabled and the initiator rejected a Restore Data Pointers message that the library sent to recover from a parity error. Or, all parity error retries were exhausted.
48h	00h	Either the library received an Initiator Detected Error message at an inappropriate time, or the initiator rejected a Restore Data Pointers message that the library sent in response to the Initiator Detected Error message.
4Eh	0h	The library disconnected while executing a command. During this time, the same initiator that issued the command also selected the target and tried to issue another command. When this error occurs, the library terminates the current connection with Check Condition status and aborts the command in progress for that initiator.

Glossary

address See *SCSI ID*.

ANSI American National Standards Institute.

ASC Additional Sense Code.

ASCQ Additional Sense Code Qualifier.

ATN Attention signal. The initiator asserts this signal on the SCSI bus to indicate that it has a message to transmit to the target.

BSY Busy signal. An “Or-tied” signal on the SCSI bus that indicates the bus is being used.

bus A signal line or a set of signal lines used by an interface system (for example, SCSI) to connect a number of devices in order to transfer information to and from those devices. For example, the SCSI cables used to connect the host computer to the library serves as a bus.

bus phase The SCSI protocol for controlling communication on the SCSI bus, such as the direction and type of information on the data lines.

byte A unit of data or storage capacity equal to 1 character or 8 bits.

C Celsius (Centigrade).

CDB Command descriptor block. The structure used to communicate SCSI commands from an initiator to a target.

CHM Cartridge handling mechanism. The robotic assembly that retrieves and replaces cartridges.

element An element can be either the CHM, a slot in a cartridge magazine, the fixed cartridge slot, or a tape drive.

element address	The unique address assigned to each library element so an initiator can identify it when sending a SCSI command. You can change the library's default element addresses by using the MODE SELECT command.
element index	Element indexes are the same as the default element addresses. However, element indexes are permanently coded in the library's firmware and cannot be changed. When you use LCD diagnostics from the operator panel, you indicate locations by specifying element indexes.
FCC	Federal Communications Commission.
GB	Gigabyte.
h	Hexadecimal (base 16) numbering system.
HBA	Host bus adapter. See <i>SCSI adapter card</i> .
host	The computer system that acts as the initiator of an operation.
Hz	Hertz.
ID	Identification.
initiator	A host computer system that requests an operation to be performed by the target.
KB	Kilobyte
kg	Kilograms.
kV	Kilovolts.
LCD	Liquid crystal display.
library	The EXB-210 or EXB-220.
LUN	Logical Unit Number.
magazine	One of the cartridge holders in the library. Each magazine accommodates up to 10 data cartridges.
MB	Megabyte.
mm	Millimeter (0.03937 inches).
μm	Micron (0.00003937 inches).
ms or msec	Millisecond.

μs or μsec	Microsecond.
nonvolatile RAM	A form of random access memory that continues to exist when the power is turned off.
ns	Nanoseconds.
POST	Power-on self-test. The process that occurs when the library performs its initial power-on diagnostics.
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface.
SCSI adapter card	A card installed in the host computer that provides a hardware interface between the host computer and the targets on the SCSI bus.
SCSI ID	A unique identifier assigned to each device or subsystem on the SCSI bus. Also referred to as the <i>address</i> .
target	A bus device (usually a controller) that performs an operation requested by an initiator. The library is a target.

Notes

Index

A

Abort (06h) message 1-12, B-7
Aborted Command (Bh) sense key 17-4
Additional Sense Code
 See ASC and ASCQ
ASC and ASCQ
 for abnormal element conditions 13-16, 18-15
 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS 4-11
 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH
 RANGE 5-11
 INQUIRY 6-10
 LOG SENSE 7-21
 MODE SELECT 8-15
 MODE SENSE 9-17
 MOVE MEDIUM 10-12
 POSITION TO ELEMENT 11-5
 READ ELEMENT STATUS 13-10, 13-13, 13-16
 to 13-17, 13-20
 READ FIRMWARE 14-5
 RELEASE 16-4
 REQUEST SENSE 17-4 to 17-5
 REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS
 18-11, 18-13, 18-15, 18-19
 RESERVE 19-9
 SEND DIAGNOSTIC 20-10
 SEND VOLUME TAG 21-8
 WRITE FIRMWARE 23-8
 See also error codes
Attention signal, response to B-2

B

bar code label information
 READ ELEMENT STATUS command 13-2
 reporting 18-1 to 18-20
 requesting 21-1 to 21-8
bar code scanner 1-1
bus device reset 2-4
Bus Device Reset (0Ch) message 1-12, 2-4, B-8
bus phases 1-10
Busy (08h) status 1-17

C

cartridge handling mechanism
 See CHM
cartridge inventory
 defined 2-7
 effect of INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS 4-4
 effect of INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH
 RANGE 5-4
 effect of MOVE MEDIUM 10-3
 establishing 2-7
 retrieving 2-7
cartridge magazine
 See data cartridge magazine
cartridges, moving with SCSI commands 2-13
Check Condition (02h) status 1-16
CHM 1-1, 1-7
cleaning cartridge 1-2, 1-7
Command Complete (00h) message 1-11, B-4
Command phase, error checking during 3-1
command status
 Busy 1-17
 Check Condition 1-16
 Good 1-16
 Reservation Conflict 1-17
 See also individual command chapters
commands
 general processing 3-1 to 3-28
 status checking 3-1 to 3-28
 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) 4-1 to
 4-12
 INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH
 RANGE (E7h) 5-1 to 5-12
 INQUIRY (12h) 6-1 to 6-10
 LOG SENSE (4Dh) 7-1 to 7-22
 MODE SELECT (15h) 8-1 to 8-16
 MODE SENSE (1Ah) 9-1 to 9-18
 MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) 10-1 to 10-12
 POSITION TO ELEMENT (2Bh) 11-1 to 11-6
 PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL
 (1Eh) 12-1 to 12-4
 READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h) 13-1 to 13-20
 READ FIRMWARE (D0h) 14-1 to 14-6
 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch) 15-1
 to 15-6
 RELEASE (17h) 16-1 to 16-4

commands (*continued*)

- REQUEST SENSE (03h) 17-1 to 17-10
- REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h) 18-1 to 18-20
- RESERVE (16h) 19-1 to 19-10
- SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh) 20-1 to 20-10
- SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) 21-1 to 21-8
- TEST UNIT READY (00h) 22-1 to 22-4
- WRITE FIRMWARE (D1h) 23-1 to 23-8

control modes 1-3 to 1-5

D

data cartridge magazine 1-2, 1-7

device reset 2-4 to 2-5

diagnostics

- commands to use 2-15

- list of software tests 20-7

Disconnect (04h) message 1-11, B-6

dual sequential mode 1-3

E

element address 1-7 to 1-9

element index 1-7 to 1-8

elements

- defined 1-7 to 1-9

- setting address 2-6

error checking, during Command phase 3-1

error codes

- Aborted Command (Sense Key Bh) D-10

- Hardware Error (Sense Key 4h) D-2 to D-7

- Illegal Request (Sense Key 5h) D-8

- Unit Attention (Sense Key 6h) D-9 to D-10

error handling A-1 to A-12

EXB-210/220

- described 1-1 to 1-18

- using as a stacker 1-3 to 1-4

extended sense bytes, REQUEST SENSE

command 17-3

F

firmware, copying 2-15, 14-1 to 14-6, 23-1 to 23-8

fixed cartridge slot 1-2

format, SCSI command 1-14

G

Good (00h) status 1-16

H

Hardware Error (4h) sense key 17-4

hardware errors

- defined 3-21

- unrecoverable, clearing 3-21

- unrecoverable, defined 3-21

- unrecoverable, processing 3-19

I

Identify (80h or C0h) message

- description 1-12, B-9

- handling of a valid B-17

- handling of an invalid B-18

Illegal Request (5h) sense key 17-4

INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS (07h) command

- description 4-1 to 4-12

- errors reported 4-11

- execution 4-8

- field definitions 4-3

- status reporting 4-10

- time required to perform 4-2

- use 2-7, 4-2

INITIALIZE ELEMENT STATUS WITH

- RANGE (E7h) command

- description 5-1 to 5-12

- errors reported 5-11

- execution 5-8

- field definitions 5-3

- status reporting 5-10

- use 2-7, 5-1

initiator

- defined 1-6

- invalid reselection 3-9

Initiator Detected Error (05h) message 1-11, B-7

INQUIRY (12h) command

- description 6-1 to 6-10

- errors reported 6-10

- execution 6-8

- field definitions 6-2

- status reporting 6-10

- use 2-15, 6-1

L

LCD

- character set C-1 to C-2
- controlling security 8-9
- programming 8-8 to 8-10

LCD Interface mode 1-3

library

- control modes 1-3 to 1-6
- elements and element addresses 1-7 to 1-9
- error and exception handling A-1 to A-12
- features 1-1
- on the SCSI bus 1-6
- parity checking 2-1
- resetting 2-4
- SCSI messages B-1 to B-20
- SCSI operations 2-1 to 2-16

LOG SENSE (4Dh) command

- description 7-1 to 7-22
- errors reported 7-21
- execution 7-18
- field definitions 7-2
- log parameters returned 7-5 to 7-11, 7-13 to 7-17
- status reporting 7-20
- use 2-15, 7-1

logical unit numbers

- invalid 3-6
- specifying 3-8

LUNs

- See logical unit numbers

M

- magazine, data cartridge 1-2, 1-7
- Message Parity Error (09h) message 1-12, B-8
- Message Reject (07h) message 1-12
- messages

- processing of B-2
- SCSI, list 1-11, B-3
- unsupported, handling B-11

MODE SELECT (15h) command

- description 8-1 to 8-16
- errors reported 8-15
- execution 8-12
- field definitions 8-2
- status reporting 8-14
- use 2-6, 8-1 to 8-2

MODE SENSE (1Ah) command

- description 9-1 to 9-18
- errors reported 9-17
- execution 9-14
- field definitions 9-2
- status reporting 9-16
- use 2-6, 9-1

MOVE MEDIUM (A5h) command

- aborted, handling B-12
- description 10-1 to 10-12
- errors reported 10-12
- execution 10-7
- field definitions 10-2
- status reporting 10-11
- use 2-13, 10-2

N

No Operation (08h) message 1-12, B-8

No Sense (0h) sense key 17-4

Not Ready (2h) sense key

- condition 3-22
- described 3-24, 17-4

error codes D-1

O

operations, SCSI 2-1 to 2-16

P

parity retries, setting 2-2

phases, SCSI bus 1-10

POSITION TO ELEMENT (2Bh) command

- aborted, handling B-12
- description 11-1 to 11-6
- errors reported 11-5
- execution 11-2
- field definitions 11-2
- status reporting 11-4
- use 2-13, 11-1

power-on reset 2-4

PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL

(1Eh) command

- description 12-1 to 12-4
- execution 12-2
- field definitions 12-2
- status reporting 12-4

R

READ ELEMENT STATUS (B8h) command

- abnormal element conditions 13-16
- description 13-1 to 13-20
- errors reported 13-20
- execution 13-17
- field definitions 13-2
- status reporting 13-19
- use 2-7, 13-2

READ FIRMWARE (D0h) command

- description 14-1 to 14-6
- errors reported 14-5
- execution 14-2
- field definitions 14-2
- status reporting 14-4
- use 2-15, 14-1

RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch) command

- description 15-1 to 15-6
- execution 15-5
- field definitions 15-2
- status reporting 15-6
- use 2-15, 15-1 to 15-2

RELEASE (17h) command

- description 16-1 to 16-4
- errors reported 16-4
- execution 16-2
- field definitions 16-2
- status reporting 16-4
- use 2-14, 16-1

REQUEST SENSE (03h) command

- description 17-1 to 17-10
- execution 17-7
- status reporting 17-9
- use 2-14, 17-1

REQUEST VOLUME ELEMENT ADDRESS (B5h) command

- description 18-1 to 18-20
- errors reported 18-19
- execution of 18-16
- status reporting 18-18
- use 2-11, 18-2

reservation conflict 3-10

Reservation Conflict (18h) status 1-17

RESERVE (16h) command

- description 19-1 to 19-10
- errors reported 19-9
- execution 19-5
- field definitions 19-3
- status reporting 19-8
- use 2-14, 19-1 to 19-2

resetting the library 2-4

Restore Pointers (03h) message 1-11, B-6

S

SCSI 1-6

- bus phases 1-10
- command format 1-14
- command status 1-15
- error and exception handling A-1 to A-12
- messages B-1 to B-20
- operations 2-1 to 2-16
- physical components 1-6

SCSI bus 1-6

SCSI bus reset 2-4

SCSI Interface mode 1-3

SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh) command

- description 20-1 to 20-10
- diagnostic tests 20-7
- errors reported 20-10
- execution 20-7
- field definitions 20-2
- status reporting 20-9
- use 2-15, 20-1 to 20-2

SEND VOLUME TAG (B6h) command

- description 21-1 to 21-8
- errors reported 21-8
- execution 21-5
- field definitions 21-3, 22-2
- status reporting 21-7
- use 2-11, 21-2 to 21-3

sense bytes, REQUEST SENSE command 17-3

sense key 17-4

Sequential 1 and 2 modes 1-3

Serial Port modes 1-3

software diagnostics, list of tests 20-7

status byte (command status) 1-15

status checking, priorities 3-1 to 3-28

T

targets 1-6

TEST UNIT READY (00h) command

- description 22-1 to 22-4
- execution 22-2
- status reporting 22-2
- use 2-14, 22-1

U

- Unit Attention (6h) sense key
 - described 17-4
 - description 3-16
 - pending condition 3-14
- unit serial number 6-8
- unrecoverable hardware errors 3-21
- unsupported messages, handling B-11

V

- volume tag information
 - reporting 18-1 to 18-20
 - requesting 21-1 to 21-8
 - template for SEND VOLUME TAG command 21-5

W

- WRITE FIRMWARE (D1h) command
 - description 23-1 to 23-8
 - errors reported 23-8
 - execution 23-4
 - field definitions 23-3
 - status reporting 23-7
 - use 2-15, 23-2 to 23-3

Notes
